This guide includes information on each Tiki administration page and tab.

Table of contents:

- **General Admin**
  - General Preferences
  - General Settings
  - Navigation
  - Date and Time
  - Change Admin Password
- **Features Admin**
  - Global Features
  - Interface
  - Programmer
  - New
  - Experimental
- **Login Config**
  - Login General Preferences
  - LDAP authentication
  - PAM authentication
  - Shibboleth Authentication
  - CAS Authentication
  - phpBB Authentication
  - Web Server Authentication
- **Community**
  - User Features
  - Community General Settings
  - Friendship Network
- **Profiles**
  - Apply Profiles
  - Profiles Advanced
- **Look and Feel**
  - Look and Feel Theme
  - General Layout Options
  - Shadow Layer
  - Pagination Links
  - UI Effects
• Custom CSS
• Miscellaneous
• i18n
  • Internationalization
  • Babelfish Links
  • Customized String Translation
• Editing and Plugins
  • Editing and Plugins General Settings
  • Plugins
  • Plugin Aliases
• Module
• Meta Tags
• Performance Admin Panel
  • Performance
  • Bytecode Cache
  • Wiki tab
  • Performance Database
  • Performance Memcache
  • Performance Plugins
  • Major Slowdown tab
  • Sessions tab
• Security
  • General Security
  • Spam Protection
  • Security Search Results
  • Site Access
  • Security Tokens
  • Clipperz online password manager
• Comments
• Feeds
  • Feeds General Preferences
  • Feeds Feeds
• Connect
• Rating
• Administer Wiki
  • Wiki General Preferences
  • Wiki Features
  • Wiki Page Staging and Approval
  • Wiki Page Listings
  • Wiki Tools
• File Gallery
  • File Gallery General Settings
  • Gallery Listings
  • Admin Gallery Listings
  • Gallery Search Indexing
• Blog
  • Blog Listings
• Image Gallery
• Articles
  • Articles General Settings
  • Articles Listing
• Forums
  • Forums General Settings
  • Forums Listing
• Trackers
• Polls
• Calendar
• Category
• Score
• Tags
  • Freetags General Settings
  • 3D Tag Browser Configuration
• Search
  • Search General Settings
  • Search Results
• FAQ
• Directory
• Maps Admin
• Google Maps
• Copyright
• Messages
• Webmail
• Wysiwyg
• Site Ads and Banners
• Intertiki
  • Intertiki Client
  • Intertiki Server
• Webservice Registration
• Search Engine Friendly URL
• Video
  • Kaltura
  • Ustream Watershed
• Social Networks
General Administration

Overview
Configure general Tiki preferences and settings that apply site-wide.

Note: Some General preferences require specific features to be enabled on the Features Admin panel.

To access
Click the General icon on the Admin Panel or Access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=general

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:

- General Preferences
- General Settings
- Navigation
- Date and Time
- Change Admin Password

Note
In Tiki2, all General Admin options were on a single tab.

General Preferences tab

Overview
Configure site-wide preferences

To Access
From the General Admin page, click the General Preferences tab.

Related Topics

- Installation
- Initial Configuration
- Bugs and Wishes
- Installation
- System Log
- Look and Feel
Note
Some of these options can be configured during Installation
In Tiki2, all General Admin options were on a single tab.

No Tabs
7.6.x 2.x

General Preferences tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release Check</td>
<td>Displays your current Tiki version. Click <strong>Reset or Upgrade Your Database</strong> to run the Tiki installer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiki version</td>
<td>Displays your current Tiki version. Click <strong>Reset or Upgrade Your Database</strong> to run the Tiki installer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check for updates automatically</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will automatically check for new updates each time you access the Admin Home page, based on your Check frequency selection</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check frequency</td>
<td>How often Tiki should check for updates. This field applies Each week only if Check for updates automatically is enabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Click</strong> <strong>Check for Updates Now</strong> to perform an update check.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site Identity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browser title</td>
<td>The text to include in the <strong>TITLE</strong> tag for each Tiki page. This will appear in the titlebar of your users' browser.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site title location</td>
<td>Location of the site title in the browser's titlebar, relative to the description fo the current page: <strong>Before</strong>, <strong>After</strong>, or <strong>None</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browser title display mode</td>
<td>When using <strong>Breadcrumbs</strong>, specify which <strong>Browser title</strong> to display: <strong>Most specific first</strong>, <strong>Least specific first</strong>, <strong>Current</strong> <strong>Most specific first only</strong>, or <strong>page Description</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender email</td>
<td>The return email address used by Tiki when sending <strong>Mail notifications</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mail</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default charset for sending mail</td>
<td>Specify the <strong>character encoding</strong> used by Tiki when sending mail notifications. utf-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail end of line</td>
<td>Specify the end-of-line (EOL) character used by Tiki when sending mail notifications: <strong>CRLF</strong> or <strong>LF</strong>. LF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail sender</td>
<td>Specify if Tiki should use <strong>Sendmail</strong>(the PHP mail() function) or <strong>SMTP</strong> to send mail notifications. <strong>Sendmail</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email to send a test mail</td>
<td>To test Tiki's ability to send mail notifications, enter an email address to which to send a test message, and click <strong>Change preferences</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Logging and Reporting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHP Error reporting level</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors: <strong>No reporting</strong>, <strong>All reporting</strong>, or <strong>All reporting except notices</strong>. <strong>Report all PHP errors except notices</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visible to admin only</td>
<td>If enabled, errors will be shown to only the Admin user.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include Smarty notices</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will display Smarty notices, too.</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Disable JavaScript            | If enabled, all site JavaScript will be disable, even if allowed by the browser.  
   ▲ Caution: Use only for testing or troubleshooting. When enabled, many Tiki features will not operate correctly. | Disabled|
| Log mail in Tiki logs         | If enabled, a line of type `mail` will be included in the `System Log` with the destination address and subject of each email sent. | Disabled|
| Log SQL                       | If enabled, all SQL queries will be registered in the database in the `adodb_logs` table.  
   ▲ Caution: Do not enable this feature all the time. It can be very resource intensive and will impact performance. | Disabled|
| Log queries using more than   | Use to log only queries that use a specific amount of time. 0.05 seconds    |         |

### Setting | Description
--- | ---
**Release Check**

**Tiki version**

Displays your current Tiki version. Click **Reset or Upgrade Your Database** to run the **Tiki installer**.

**Check for updates automatically**

If enabled, Tiki will automatically check for new updates (based on your **Check frequency** selection) each time you access the **Admin Home** page.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site Identity</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browser title</td>
<td>The text to include in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender email</td>
<td>The return email address used by Tiki when sending Mail notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Page</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use group homepages</td>
<td>Specify that each group has its own homepage. After a user logs in, they will be taken to the group’s home page. Use the Groups management panel to define the homepage for each group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use TikiWiki feature as homepage</td>
<td>Select the home page for your Tiki. Select from the list of enabled features such as wiki, articles, or blog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use different URL as home page</td>
<td>Specify any valid URL as the home page for your Tiki. This must be a fully qualified URL. For example, if you want to use a different wiki page (other than HomePage) as your Tiki's home, use: tiki-index.php?page=PAGENAME. This option will override the Use TikiWiki feature as homepage setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server OS</td>
<td>Select the operating system of the server hosting your Tiki: Unix, Windows, or Other/Unknown. Tiki will attempt to recognize your server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarty security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use PEAR::Date library</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default charset for sending mail</td>
<td>Specify the character encoding used by Tiki when sending mail notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail end of line</td>
<td>Specify the end-of-line (EOL) character used by Tiki when sending mail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>notifications</strong></td>
<td><strong>CRLF or LF.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Logging and Reporting</strong></td>
<td>Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors: No reporting, All reporting, or All reporting except notices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHP error reporting level</td>
<td>If <strong>Visible to Admin only</strong> is enabled, errors will be shown to only the Admin user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If <strong>Include Smarty notices</strong> is enabled, any Smarty notices will be shown, too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log mail in Tiki logs</td>
<td>If enabled, a line of type <code>mail</code> will be included in the System Log with the destination address and subject of each email sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If enabled, all SQL queries will be registered in the database in the <code>adodb_logsql</code> table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log SQL</td>
<td>Use the <strong>Log queries using more than</strong> option to limit the logging of queries to queries that use a specific amount of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Caution:</strong> Do not enable this feature all the time. It can be very resource intensive and will impact performance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CSRF Security**

- Require confirmation if possible CSRF detected.
- Protect against CSRF with ticket.

Click the **General** icon on the **Admin Panel** to display the **General** screen. Use the **General Admin** panel to set general Tiki preferences and settings.

These settings apply site-wide to your Tiki. Some General preferences require specific features to be enabled on the **Features Admin** panel.

**General Preferences**

**Note:** Prior to 1.9.9, you could specify the Tiki theme in the General Preferences. For later releases, use the Administration: Theme page.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use group homepages</td>
<td>Specify that each group has its own homepage. After a user logs in, they will be taken to the group's home page. Use the <a href="http://tiki.org">Groups Management</a> panel to define the homepage for each group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to group homepage only if login from default homepage</td>
<td>If enabled, the user will be taken to the group's home only if they logged in from the Tiki default homepage (as defined by the <strong>Home Page</strong> field).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use URI as homepage</td>
<td>Specify any valid URI as the home page for your Tiki. This must be a fully qualified URI. For example, if you want to use a different wiki page (other than HomePage) as your Tiki's home, use: <code>tiki-index.php?page=PAGENAME</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home page</td>
<td>Select the home page for your Tiki. Select from the list of <a href="http://tiki.org">enabled features</a> (such as wiki, articles, or blog). Note: This setting will be ignored if you selected the <strong>Use URI...</strong> setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Select the operating system of the server hosting your Tiki: Unix, Windows, or Unknown/Other. Tiki will attempt to recognize your web server. Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors to non-Admin users. Note: Select <strong>Report only for admin</strong> to hide error reports from your regular site users and display the errors only to admins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHP error reporting level for non-admin</td>
<td><strong>New in 1.10</strong>: Select one of three error reporting levels: &quot;No error reporting&quot;, &quot;Report all PHP errors&quot; or &quot;Report all errors except notices.&quot; Use the &quot;visible to admin only&quot; checkbox to hide errors from end users. Use the &quot;smarty notice reporting&quot; checkbox to add notices from the templating system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Mail in Tiki Logs</td>
<td>If activated, a line of type mail will be added in tiki Logs with the destination email address and the subject for each email sent. If the email is shown to be sent and does not arrive at the destination does not receive the mail it means that the mail server is not configured properly (see sendmail/php documentation) or that the mail has been considered as spam by the destination. If an error occurs, a line of type mail error will be added to Tiki logs (even if the feature is not activated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log SQL</td>
<td>If this feature is checked, all the queries will be registered in the database in the table adodb_logsql. <strong>Caution</strong>: Do not activate this feature all time. It can be very resource intensive!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Default charset for sending mail

Specify the character set encoding used by Tiki when sending Mail notifications.

Mail end of line

Specify the end of line character used by Tiki when sending Mail notifications:
CRLF or LF.

General Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disallow access to the site</td>
<td>Use this setting to &quot;close&quot; your Tiki (such as for maintenance). Users attempting to access your site will see only a login. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message to display when site is closed</td>
<td>Specify the message that visitors will see when accessing your site. This setting applies only when Disallow access... is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disallow access when load is above the threshold</td>
<td>Use this option to &quot;close&quot; your Tiki when the server load exceeds a specific threshold. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max average server load threshold in the last minute</td>
<td>Define the maximum server load. This setting applies only when Disallow access... is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message to display when server is too busy</td>
<td>Specify the message that visitors will see when accessing your site if the site is closed due to excessive server load. When the server load falls below the threshold, users will be allowed back into the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open external links in new window</td>
<td>Specify if links to external sites should open in a new browser window. If not selected, all links will reuse the current browser window. Moved to Text Area Admin at least at v2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display modules to all groups always</td>
<td>Specify if all Module are visible to all group — regardless of the specific module settings. If not selected, use the Module Admin page to specify which modules are visible to which groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use cache for external pages</td>
<td>Specify if external pages are cached and stored on your server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use cache for external images</td>
<td>Specify if external images are cached and stored on your server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use direct pagination links

Display menus as folders
Specify if menu options be displayed using the folder icon. If not selected, a + and - will be used instead.

Use gzipped output
Specify if Tiki should use GZIP to compress pages before sending them to the user's browser. Selecting this option will reduce your site's bandwidth usage. See Compression for more information.

Count admin pageviews
Specify if the Tiki statistics will include page views from users with Admin permission.

Hide anonymous-only modules from registered users
Specify if Module with only anonymous permission are visible to non-anonymous users.

Server name (for absolute URIs)
The server name to use when creating absolute URIs.

Browser title
The text to include in the

Temporary directory
A directory on your web server to use for temporary files.

Note: You must have write- access to this directory. It is also where your session files if saved on disk will go. If you do not want interference with other application than redefines the session lifetime, it is better to define a directory specific to tikiwiki.

Sender email
The return email address used by Tiki when sending Mail notifications.

Contact user
Specify the user who receives mail from the Contact Us feature. You must enable the Contact Us feature on the Features Admin page.

Store session data in database
Specify if session data will be stored in the database instead of memory. Use this feature to share load between servers.

Session lifetime in minutes
Specify the session time. (0 will use the default session.gc_maxlifetime defines in php.ini). If session uses files, the files will go in the temporary directory.

Use proxy
Specify if your server requires a proxy to access external web pages (i.e. to cache them). If selected, specify the Proxy Host and Proxy Port.
Maximum number of records in listings

Specify the maximum number of records (items) to show when Tiki displays pages.

Help URL

Specify the root URL for your Tiki's online help. To use the default Tiki help on this site, use: http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=

Date and Time Formats

Specify the Long Date, Short Date, Long Time, and Short Time formats. The following table lists the possible format strings:

Day

%a  Abbreviated weekday name according to the current locale
%A  Full weekday name according to the current locale
%d  Day of the month as a decimal number (range 01 to 31)
%e  Day of the month as a decimal number, a single digit is preceded by a space (range 1 to 31)
%u  Day of the week as a decimal, with 1 representing Monday (range 1 to 7)
%w  Day of the week as a decimal, with 0 being Sunday (range 0 to 6)
%j  Day of the year as a decimal number (range 001 to 366)

Week

%U  Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Sunday as the first day of the first week
%W  Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Monday as the first day of the first week
%V  The ISO 8601:1988 week number of the current year as a decimal number, range 01 to 53, where week 1 is the first week that has at least 4 days in the current year, and with Monday
as the first day of the week. (Use %G or %g for the year component that corresponds to the week number for the specified timestamp.)

**Month**

%b  Abbreviated month name according to the current locale

%B  Full month name according to the current locale

%m  Month as a decimal number (range 01 to 12)

**Year**

%C  Century number (the year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer, range 00 to 99)

%G  The 4-digit year corresponding to the ISO week number (see %V). This has the same format and value as %Y, except that if the ISO week number belongs to the previous or next year, that year is used instead.

%g  Like %G, but without the century.

%y  Year as a decimal number without a century (range 00 to 99)

%Y  Year as a decimal number including the century

**Time**

%H  Hour as a decimal number using a 24-hour clock (range 00 to 23)

%I  Hour as a decimal number using a 12-hour clock (range 01 to 12)

%M  Minute as a decimal number

%p  Either am or pm according to the given time value, or the corresponding strings for the current locale

%r  Time in a.m. and p.m. notation

%R  Time in 24 hour notation
%S  Second as a decimal number

%S  Current time, equal to %H:%M:%S

Notes

%c  Preferred date and time representation for the current locale

%!  Preferred date representation for the current locale without the time

%X  Preferred time representation for the current locale without the date

%D  Same as %m/%d/%y

%h  Same as %b

%n  Newline character

%t  Tab character

%Z or  Time zone or name or abbreviation

%z

%%  A literal % character

See the [PHP Manual](http://tiki.org) for details.

Other Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tikiwiki version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When possible, show the real user name instead of login:</td>
<td>Check this box to enable this feature</td>
<td>&gt;= 1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Favicon icon file name</td>
<td>Specify the name of the <a href="http://tiki.org">Favorite's Icon</a> (or page icon) for your Tiki. Note: The file must be in your root directory.</td>
<td>&gt;= 1.9. Moved to Look&amp;Feel/other in 1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Favicon icon MIME type</td>
<td>Specify the format of the Favicon: PNG, BMP, or X-ICON.</td>
<td>&gt;= 1.9. Moved to Look&amp;Feel/other in 1.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Locations separator
The icon used in the breadcrumbs when displaying the category or structure path. >= 1.9

Choices separator:
The character used to separate choices wherever they appear. Examples: | / |
>= 1.10

"1.9 - $feature_foobar" recommended for upgraded sites with 1.9.x theme styles not yet upgraded to 1.10

Preference syntax:
"1.10 - $prefs.feature_foobar, $prefs['feature_foobar']" recommended for upgraded sites using already 1.10 compliant theme styles
>= 1.10

Example for an upgraded site to Tikiwiki 1.10 but still using an old 1.9.x theme style:

Register This Site
Use this option to register your Tiki with tikiwiki.org and join the Tiki community.

Change Admin Password
Use this option to change your Admin password. Enter a new password (case sensitive), repeat the password for verification, and click Change Password.

General Settings tab

Overview
Configure general settings for specific Tiki features

**To Access**
From the [General Admin](Link) page, click the **General Settings** tab.

### No Tabs
7.x, 6.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temporary</td>
<td>Directory on your server, relative to your Tiki installation, for storing temp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directory</td>
<td>temporary files. Tiki must have full read and write access to this directory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use proxy</td>
<td>Specify if Tiki requires a proxy to access the internet. If enabled, you can specify your proxy <strong>Host</strong> and <strong>Port</strong> settings.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-domain</td>
<td>If enabled, use the <strong>Multi-domain Configuration</strong> area to specify the domains (one per line).</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Terminal</td>
<td>If enabled, use the <strong>Site Terminal Configuration</strong> area to specify the network prefixes (one per line, using CIDR notation).</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Us</td>
<td>Enables the <strong>Contact Us</strong> feature. If enabled, you can also specify to <strong>Allow anonymous visitor to use the &quot;Contact Us&quot; feature</strong> and to which <strong>User</strong> to send the contact messages.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stats</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will maintain a page with basic statistics (such as number and size of wiki pages, days online, and so on)</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referrer stats</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will maintain a list of site referrals to your Tiki</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count admin pageviews</td>
<td>If enabled, page views when logged in as the <strong>admin will</strong> be included in the overall site statistics.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki will create PDFs of pages. If using <strong>Webkit</strong> you must include the path (relative to your Tiki installation) of the <strong>wkhtmltopdf</strong> application. If using <strong>Webservice</strong>,</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Setting | Description
--- | ---
Include the full URL to the webservice API. |  
### Miscellaneous

**Help system**

If enabled, Tiki includes help links (🔗) to the Tiki documentation.

If enabled, you can specify a **Help URL** that contains customized help pages. By default, the Help system uses [http://doc.tiki.org/](http://doc.tiki.org/)

**Close site**

Use this setting to "close" your Tiki (such as for maintenance). Users attempting to access your site will see only a login. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.

Use the **Message to display** to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.

**Close site when server load is above the threshold**

Use **Maximum average server load threshold in the last minute** to define the maximum server load.

Use the **Message to display** to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.

**Use proxy**

Specify if your server requires a proxy to access external web pages (i.e. to cache them). If selected, specify the **Proxy Host** and **Proxy Port**.

**On permission denied, display login module**

**Performance**

**Cache external pages**

Specify if external pages are cached and stored on your server.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cache external images</td>
<td>Specify if external images are cached and stored on your server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GZip output</td>
<td>Specify if Tiki should use <strong>GZIP</strong> to compress pages before sending them to the user's browser. Selecting this option will reduce your site's bandwidth usage. See <a href="#">Compression</a> for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Session**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Store session data in database</td>
<td>Specify if session data will be stored in the database instead of memory. Use this feature to share load between servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session lifetime</td>
<td>Specify the session time. (0 will use the default session.gc_maxlifet ime, defined in php.ini). If session uses files, the files will go in the temporary directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Server**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temporary directory:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use proxy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host:</td>
<td>(You need to set Use proxy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port:</td>
<td>(You need to set Use proxy)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Multi-domain**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multi-domain</td>
<td>(You need to set Perspectives)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration:</td>
<td>One domain per line. Comma separated with perspective ID. Ex.: tiki.org,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contact**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow anonymous visitors to use the &quot;Contact Us&quot; feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact user</td>
<td>Specify the user who receives mail from the <strong>Contact Us</strong> feature. You must enable the <strong>Contact Us</strong> feature on the <strong>Features Admin</strong> page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stats</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referer Stats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count admin pageviews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Print</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDF from url</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webkit path:</td>
<td>path to wkhtmltopdf in your server (download it from <a href="http://code.google.com/p/wkhtmltopdf/">http://code.google.com/p/wkhtmltopdf/</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webservice URL:</td>
<td>url for the PDF webservice that you want to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count admin pageviews</td>
<td>Specify if the Tiki statistics will include page views from users with Admin permission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary directory</td>
<td>A directory on your web server to use for temporary files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help System</td>
<td>Use to enable the TikiWiki online help system. Use the Help URL to specify the root URL for your Tiki's online help. To use the default Tiki help on this site, use: <a href="http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=">http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's real name instead of login</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's contribution on the user information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>Display UserTracker information on the user information page:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separators</td>
<td>The icon used in the breadcrumbs when displaying the category or structure path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locations</td>
<td>Choices separator:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Navigation tab

### Overview
Configure site navigation features such as menus and error redirects.

### To Access
From the General Admin page, click the Navigation tab.

### Related Topics
- Navigation Overview
- Menus
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Menus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSS Menus</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will use display CSS-styled (CSS_Suckerfish) vertical or horizontal menus.</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If enabled, you can include raw HTML when creating menu options. This coding will be rendered by Tiki <strong>without</strong> filtering or sanitization.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow HTML...</td>
<td><img src="https://via.placeholder.com/15" alt="Warning" /> This is potentially dangerous, as it allows raw HTML to be added. Be sure to enable this option <strong>only</strong> if trusted users can create and edit menus.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu user levels</td>
<td><strong>Setting</strong></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Featured links</td>
<td>Enables the <a href="#">Featured Links</a> option.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display menus as folders</td>
<td>![Info icon] Note: This option applies only for non-CSS menus.</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu icons</td>
<td>If enabled, enter the <strong>Default path for menu icons</strong>, relative to your Disabled Tiki installation.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Page</strong></td>
<td><strong>Use group home pages</strong> If enabled, each <a href="#">Group</a> will have its own &quot;home&quot; page. If enabled, you can also specify group members will Go to the group home page only if logging in from the default home page</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Tiki feature as homepage</td>
<td>Select the home page for your Tiki. Select from the list of <strong>enabled features</strong> such as wiki, articles, or blog.</td>
<td>Wiki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use URL index</td>
<td>Specify any valid URL as the home page for your Tiki. This must be a fully qualified URL. For example, if you want to use a different wiki page (other than HomePage) as your Tiki's home, use: <code>tiki-index.php?page=PAGENAME</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Redirects</strong></td>
<td><strong>Redirects</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain prefix handling</td>
<td>Leave as-is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain redirects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect on error</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect to similar wiki page</td>
<td>If enabled, if a visitor attempts to access a wiki page that does not exist, Tiki will display a similarly named page (instead of showing a Disabled &quot;page not found&quot; message.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On permission denied, display login module</td>
<td>If enabled, if an Anonymous visitor attempts to access a page to which he does have permission, Tiki will automatically display the Login module. Alternatively, use the <strong>Send to URL</strong> field to display a specific page (relative to your Tiki installation) instead.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect Anonymous on page not found</td>
<td></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect Registered after account validation</td>
<td>The default page a Registered user sees after account validation is <em>tiki-information.php?msg=Account validated successfully</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect when clicking a username</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Access</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close Site</td>
<td>Use this setting to &quot;close&quot; your Tiki (such as for maintenance). Users attempting to access your site will see only a login. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close site when server load is above the threshold</td>
<td>Use <strong>Maximum average server load threshold in the last minute</strong> to define the maximum server load.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the **Message to display** to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.
Date and Time tab

Overview
Configure how Tiki displays date and time information.

To Access
From the General Admin page, click the Date and Time tab.

Notes
See the Date and Time Formats table and PHP Manual for detailed information on date and time settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timezone</td>
<td>Select the default timezone for your site.</td>
<td>UTC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics
- Date and Time Features

No Tabs
7.x 6.x
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Displayed timezone</td>
<td>Use time zone set from user preferences, or the automatically detected time zone for anonymous (if browser allows). Site default is used as fallback.</td>
<td>Use time zone set from user preferences...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long date format</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki displays the date</td>
<td>%A %d of %B, %Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short date format</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki displays the date</td>
<td>%Y-NaVd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long time format</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki displays the time</td>
<td>%H %M %S %Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short time format</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki displays the time</td>
<td>%H %M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields display order</td>
<td></td>
<td>Month, Day Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip date for same day</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will skip the date (that is, show only the time) for items occurring on the current date.</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Parameter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default timezone</td>
<td>Select the default timezone for your site. You can also specify if Tiki will Use site default to show times or if attempt to Detect user timezone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date and Time formats</td>
<td>Specify the Long Date, Short Date, Long Time, and Short Time formats. The following table lists the possible format strings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields display order</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tip: When you save your changes, Tiki will display a sample of the selected date and time formats.

Date and Time Formats

Day

%a  Abbreviated weekday name according to the current locale
%A  Full weekday name according to the current locale
%d  Day of the month as a decimal number (range 01 to 31)
%e  Day of the month as a decimal number, a single digit is preceded by a space (range 1 to 31)
%u  Day of the week as a decimal, with 1 representing Monday (range 1 to 7)
%w  Day of the week as a decimal, with 0 being Sunday (range 0 to 6)
%j  Day of the year as a decimal number (range 001 to 366)

Week

%U  Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Sunday as the first day of the first week
%W  Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Monday as the first day of the first week

The ISO 8601:1988 week number of the current year as a decimal number, range 01 to 53, where week 1 is the first week that has at least 4 days in the current year, and with Monday as the first day of the week. (Use %G or %g for the year component that corresponds to the week number for the specified timestamp.)

Month

%b  Abbreviated month name according to the current locale
%B  Full month name according to the current locale

%m  Month as a decimal number (range 01 to 12)

Year

%C  Century number (the year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer, range 00 to 99)

The 4-digit year corresponding to the ISO week number (see %V). This has the same format and value as %Y, except that if the ISO week number belongs to the previous or next year, that year is used instead.

%G  Like %G, but without the century.

%y  Year as a decimal number without a century (range 00 to 99)

%Y  Year as a decimal number including the century

Time

%H  Hour as a decimal number using a 24-hour clock (range 00 to 23)

%I  Hour as a decimal number using a 12-hour clock (range 01 to 12)

%M  Minute as a decimal number

%p  Either am or pm according to the given time value, or the corresponding strings for the current locale

%r  Time in a.m. and p.m. notation

%R  Time in 24 hour notation

%S  Second as a decimal number

%T  Current time, equal to %H:%M:%S

Notes
%c  Preferred date and time representation for the current locale
%x  Preferred date representation for the current locale without the time
%X  Preferred time representation for the current locale without the date
%D  Same as %m/%d/%y
%h  Same as %b
%n  Newline character
%t  Tab character
%Z or %z  Time zone or name or abbreviation
%%%  A literal % character

Change Admin Password tab
Use this tab to change the password for your administrator (Admin) account.

Features Admin
Overview
Enable or disable Tiki features

To access
Click the Features icon on the Admin Panel
or

Related Topics
• Bugs and Wishes
Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- Global Features
- Interface
- Programmer
- New
- Experimental

Note

No Tabs
Default Pre-6.x

Click the "Pre-6.x" tab for versions prior to 6.X.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Figure 1. The Admin: Features page

-
Clicking the **Features** icon on the **Admin Panel** (see TikiAdminSettings) takes you to the **Features** screen, where you can enable or disable Tiki features. See Fig 1.

Figure 1. A view of the Features Page

Use this screen to choose which features will be available in your tiki. Thus, you can tailor Tiki to your specific needs without configuring the entire application. The default installation of Tiki enables very few features.

Remember, when you disable a feature, all the screens and modules related to the feature will produce an error screen if accessed. If you are receiving an error screen when accessing a feature, check this page first.

TikiFeatures provides short descriptions of the main Tiki features. Follow the links below for additional documentation on each of the features you can enable or disable from this screen. *In addition, while viewing the Administration screen, you may click any term for help!*

Starting with **Tikiwiki 1.10**, the Admin: Features page has each feature grouped into common sections.

!! Major features

!! Minor features

!! Site-wide features
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!! Technical Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!! User interface enhancement features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!! Experimental Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!! Content Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!! Administration Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!! User Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Tiki sections and features (1.9.x)

**Image Gallery**

**File Gallery**

**Articles**

**Forum**

**FAQ**

**Shoutbox**

**Chat**

**Trackers**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Directory</td>
<td>Webmail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newsreader</td>
<td>Surveys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polls</td>
<td>Ephemerides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quiz</td>
<td>Search</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Featured links</td>
<td>Banners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newsletters</td>
<td>Live support system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini Calendar</td>
<td>Map</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help System</td>
<td>Multilingual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Best language</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Category Path</td>
<td>Show Babelfish Translation URLs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Category Objects</td>
<td>Show Babelfish Translation Logo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Module Controls</td>
<td>Tiki Calendar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail-in</td>
<td>Tiki Template Viewing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrator</td>
<td>PHP Layers dynamic menus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Js Calendar</td>
<td>Use Tabs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Score</td>
<td>Tiki Sheet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friendship Network</td>
<td>Site Logo and Identity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile</td>
<td>Intertiki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### New features coming along in Tikiwiki 1.10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Google Maps</td>
<td>Trackbacks Pings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tags
- Morcego 3D Browser
- Ajax
- Calendar manual selection of time/date
- Contribution

### Wysiwyg
- Propose a Fullscreen mode

### Help System
- Copyright system

### HTML Purifier
(Content is cleaned to XHTML 1.1 Strict on each save)

---

**Content Features**

![Content Features](image)

**Figure 2. The Content Features Section**

**Hotwords**
If enabled, Wiki pages are parsed and some words are automatically converted to HTML links. E.g., `TVCrit` becomes [http://www.TVCrit.com](http://www.TVCrit.com). Admins can edit these words from the Admin Management Page.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hotwords in New Windows</td>
<td>When enabled clicking a Hotword bring the target page in a new window instead of changing the current page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Home</td>
<td>If enabled, a customized page will serve as the home page for the Tiki.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawings</td>
<td>Enables JGraphPad drawing tool.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charts</td>
<td>Enables charts for featured links.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit templates</td>
<td>Dynamic template editing from within Tiki. Permits the rearrangement of Tiki's headers, footers, and columns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit CSS</td>
<td>Dynamic CSS (Cascading Style Sheet) editing from within Tiki. Permits the changing of Tiki's style (fonts, colors, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Content System</td>
<td>Edit blocks of text or HTML code that can be included in any template or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Smileys</td>
<td>Permit emoticons in forum/blog posts, Wiki pages, etc.</td>
<td>user module.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Administration Features

**Figure 3. The Administration Features section**

- **Stats**
  - Site statistics.

- **Referer stats**
  - Tracks which sites have referred users to your site.

- **Theme control**
  - Admin can make sections, categories or individual objects use different themes.

- **Debugger Console**
  - Analyze the operation of your Tiki.

- **Communications (send/receive objects)**
  - Users may exchange Tiki objects with each other and admin.

- **XMLRPC API**
  - The Blogger XMLRPC API, which allows Blogger-compatible applications to
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manage Tiki blogs. Note that the API is carefully implemented to respect Tiki permissions so it is NOT a security compromise to enable this feature. It is as safe as the rest of the site.</td>
<td>Contact-us feature includes a contact form and an email link that is coded to defeat spammers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Us</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Figure 4. The User Features section  
These settings apply only to registered users. | A screen where users can set their preferences for example, their themes. |         |
<p>| User Bookmarks   | Users get a personal hyperlink directory.                                  |         |
| User Watches     | Users can configure the blogs, forums, Wiki pages, etc. that they are monitoring (&quot;watching&quot;). |         |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User Tasks</td>
<td>Users get a to-do lists.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Files</td>
<td>Allows users to upload personal files.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Users can Configure Modules</strong></td>
<td>Users with the right permissions can configure modules to their needs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Users can Shade Modules</strong></td>
<td>Users can flip between show module title only and show module title+contents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Menu</td>
<td>Users can create their own menus of Tiki objects.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Messages</td>
<td>Users can send personal messages between them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Notepad</td>
<td>Users can create personal notes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- !General Layout options

Figure 5. The General Layout Options section
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Right column</strong></td>
<td>Display right column</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Top bar</strong></td>
<td>Display the top bar, possibly including site tabs, search, banners, logo and/or login field (depending on theme and preferences)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bottom bar</strong></td>
<td>Display the bottom bar, possibly including server stats, powered by logos and/or RSS XML links (depending on theme and preferences)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Layout per section</strong></td>
<td>When this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Admin layout per section</strong></td>
<td>Access the admin layout screen by clicking the Admin layout per section link.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This part of the features section can be used to control the look and feel (layout) of your Tiki site. Basically, you can enable/disable the columns, the top bar (where the Tiki version is indicated) and the footer. If you want a 1-column layout without changing anything in the code, this is the way to go.
Some users ask if there's a need to display the copyright message for Tiki. The answer is a clear NO. You can use Tiki for whatever you want and you can customize it to look exactly as you want.

Note that you may want to enable the **Layout per section** option. When this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections. For example, you may want to remove the right column only in the forums. If so, enable the **layout per section** option and use the admin layout screen to select individual layouts for sections. (Access the admin layout screen by clicking the Admin layout per section link.)

!!Layout-per-section Options

You can select an individual layout for the following sections:

* Wiki
* Image galleries
* File galleries
* CMS (Articles)
* Blog
* Forum
* Chat
* Category
* Games
* FAQ
* HTML sages
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>* Quiz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Surveys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Webmail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Trackers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Featured links</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Directory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* User messages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Newsreader</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* MyTiki</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* WorkFlow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Charts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember to click the **Update** button when you've made changes.

TikiTeam
UserPagejbutler
WhiteBoy
mdavey - minor edits

---

**Global Features**

**Overview**

Enables mature, stable end user features

**To Access**

From the Features page, click the Global Features tab.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Feature</td>
<td>Wiki</td>
<td>Enables the Wiki feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blog</td>
<td>Enables the Blog feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forums</td>
<td>Enables the Forums feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polls</td>
<td>Enables the Polls feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Newsletters</td>
<td>Enables the Newsletters feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Enables the Category feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MySQL Full-Text Search</td>
<td>Enables the MySQL Full-Text Search feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>File Gallery</td>
<td>Enables the File Gallery feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>Enables the Articles feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trackers</td>
<td>Enables the Trackers feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar</td>
<td>Enables the Calendar feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banners</td>
<td>Enables the Banners feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freetags</td>
<td>Enables the Freetags feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surveys</td>
<td>Enables the Surveys feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quizzes</td>
<td>Enables the Quizzes feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maps</td>
<td>Enables the Maps feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live Support System</td>
<td>Enables the Live Support System feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share</td>
<td>Enables the Share feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Score</td>
<td>Enables the Score feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Content System</td>
<td>Enables the Dynamic Content System feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory</td>
<td>Enables the Directory feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoutbox</td>
<td>Enables the Shoutbox feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Maps</td>
<td>Enables the Google Maps feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tell a Friend</td>
<td>Enables the Tell a Friend feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minichat</td>
<td>Enables the Minichat feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Screen</td>
<td>Enables the Full Screen feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Watches</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Watches</td>
<td>Enables the User Watches feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Reports for User Watches</td>
<td>Enables the Daily Reports for User Watches feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Watches Languages</td>
<td>Enables the User Watches Languages feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Watches</td>
<td>Enables the Group Watches feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Watches Translations</td>
<td>Enables the User Watches feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Alert</td>
<td>Enables the Group Alert feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fieldset or section</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field set or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field set or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table of contents:
Interface

Overview
Enables third party package features

To Access
From the Features page, click the Interface tab.

No Tabs
7.x6.x5.x4.x3.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AJAX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ajax</td>
<td>Enables the Ajax feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajax auto-save</td>
<td>Enables the Ajax auto-save feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save draft</td>
<td>Enables the Save draft feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajax xAjax</td>
<td>Enables the Ajax xAjax feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

jQuery plugins and add-ons
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autocomplete</td>
<td>Enables the Autocomplete feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflection</td>
<td>Enables the Reflection feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tooltips</td>
<td>Enables the Tooltips feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JQuery UI</td>
<td>Enables the JQuery UI feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JQuery Media</td>
<td>Enables the JQuery Media feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superfish</td>
<td>Enables the Superfish feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JQuery UI Theme</td>
<td>Select JQuery UI Theme</td>
<td>Drop-down option list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation</td>
<td>Enables the Validation feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Experimental**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JQuery Infinite Carousel</td>
<td>Enables the JQuery Infinite Carousel feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JQuery Sortable Tables</td>
<td>Enables the JQuery Sortable Tables feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JQuery JQS5</td>
<td>Enables the JQuery JQS5 feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fieldset or section</th>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://tiki.org), Page 47
Table of contents:

---

Programmer

Overview

Enables features that are useful to programmers

To Access

From the Features page, click the Programmer tab.

No Tabs

7.x 6.x 5.x 4.x 3.x

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Fieldset or section

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

Related Topics

- reference
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Integrator</td>
<td>Enables the Integrator feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugger Console</td>
<td>Enables the Debugger Console feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable Javascript</td>
<td>Disable JavaScript (over-rides browser settings)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLRPC API</td>
<td>Enables the XMLRPC API</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TikiTests</td>
<td>Enables TikiTests</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarty Compilation</td>
<td>Select Smarty Caching policy</td>
<td>Drop-down option list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Logging and Reporting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PHP Error Reporting Level</strong></td>
<td>Select PHP Error Reporting Level</td>
<td>Drop-down option list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visible to Admin only</td>
<td>Makes errors visible to admin only</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include Smarty notices</td>
<td>Enables Smarty notices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log mail in Tiki Logs</td>
<td>Enables logging of mail in Tiki Logs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log SQL</td>
<td>Enables SQL logging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom bar debug</td>
<td>Enables debugging features on the bottom bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarty template usage indicator</td>
<td>Enables HTML comments at the beggining and end of each template</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Code**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Custom Javascript</td>
<td>Includes an inline block of custom JavaScript on all pages</td>
<td>JavaScript code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarty Security</td>
<td>Disables PHP code in Smarty Templates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Table of contents:

New

Overview
New or recently modified features at a 1.0 level of development

Related Topics
- reference

To Access

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://tiki.org), Page 50
From the Features page, click the New tab.

### NoTabs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7.x</th>
<th>6.x</th>
<th>5.x</th>
<th>4.x</th>
<th>3.x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
<td><strong>Default</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BigBlueButton</td>
<td>Enable BigBlueButton feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaltura</td>
<td>Enable Kaltura feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Indexed</td>
<td>Enable Print Indexed feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search engine friendly url</td>
<td>Enable Search engine friendly urls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webmail</td>
<td>Enable the webmail feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mindmap</td>
<td>Enable the mindmap feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invite Users</td>
<td>Enable the Invite Users feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perspectives</td>
<td>Enable the Perspectives feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Permission Assignment</td>
<td>Enable the Quick Permission Assignment feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spreadsheet</td>
<td>Enable the Spreadsheet feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting | Description | Default
--- | --- | ---
WebDAV Access to Tiki | Enable the WebDAV Access feature | 
Web Services | Enable the Web Services feature | 
Wysiwyg editor | Enable the Wysiwyg editor feature | 

### Fieldset or section

| Field name | Description | Value |
--- | --- | --- |

### Experimental

**Overview**
Features are shown on this label for a variety of reasons:
• Features that may change or might be re-worked in the future
• Features that need admin help and user patience to work well
• Malfunctioning
• Features that have critical faults - not recommended
• Old features no longer maintained
• A new feature that is intended, if it progresses well, to replace another feature.

To Access
From the Features page, click the Experimental tab.

Note
Tiki has more built-in features than any other Open Source Web application we know of. (Other apps tend to have a small "core" and add functionality via add-ons/extensions/etc. This all-in-one model has many benefits. However, like Wikipedia, it means that we must accept varying level of quality. So this doesn't mean all feature are good. It also doesn't mean that features won't be pulled out later on. In the admin panel and on the doc site, we'll tag/identify features that are considered "experimental".

No Tabs
7.x6.x5.x4.x3.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fresh out of the oven
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiki User Credits</td>
<td>Enable the Tiki User Credits feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ustream Watershed</td>
<td>Enable the Ustream Watershed feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Balancer</td>
<td>Enable the Load Balancer feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Networks</td>
<td>Enable the Social Networks feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seem ok, but...</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Log</td>
<td>Enable the Action Log feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contribution</td>
<td>Enable the Contribution feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Home</td>
<td>Enable the Custom Home feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intertiki</td>
<td>Enable the Intertiki feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile</td>
<td>Enable the Mobile feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communications</td>
<td>Enable the Communications feature to send and receive objects</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright</td>
<td>Enable the Copyright feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friendship Network</td>
<td>Enable the Friendship Network feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail-in</td>
<td>Enable the Mail-in feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morcego 3D browser</td>
<td>Enable the Morcego 3D browser feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Will be phased out</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAQ</td>
<td>Enable the FAQ feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTML pages</td>
<td>Enable the HTML pages feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Gallery</td>
<td>Enable the Image Gallery feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related

- Experimental

Alias

- Neglected
- experimental feature
- experimental features
Login Administration page

Overview
Configure Tiki login, registration, and authentication settings.

To access
Click the Login icon on the Admin Panel or

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:
- Login General Preferences
- LDAP authentication
- PAM authentication
- Shibboleth Authentication
- CAS Authentication
- phpBB Authentication
- Web Server Authentication

General Preferences

Overview
Use this tab to configure your user registration and site security features.

To Access
From the Login Config page, click the General Preferences tab.

No Tabs
6.x2.x1.9.x
In this section of the admin panel you can setup several settings for your user registration and site security features. The settings are the following ones:
### Setting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authentication method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Just Tiki</strong></td>
<td>Tiki will use its internal user database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Web Server</strong></td>
<td>Tiki will use your web server's authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tiki and Pear</strong></td>
<td>Tiki will use both its internal user database and Pear::Auth, which will allow LDAP authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tiki and PAM</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CAS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shibboleth</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OpenID and Tiki</strong></td>
<td>(introduced in 2.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The [External Authentication](http://tiki.org) page has details on each of these methods.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Users can register:</td>
<td>If enabled, this will allow users to register, using the webform. The Login module will include a Register link. If disabled, the admin will have to create new users manually on the Admin Users page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but need Admin validation:</td>
<td>Login module with Register link. If enabled, each user registration must be validated by the administrator. After a new user completes the reregistration form, a validation request will be sent to the administrator (defined by the Sender email field on the General Admin page. The administrator must validate the user before the user can login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a group for each user</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will automatically create a group for the user. The group name will be the same as the user name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use tracker for more user information</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will display a tracker form for the user to complete, as part of the registration process. Use this tracker to store additional information about each user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use tracker for more group information:</td>
<td>Use a tracker to store additional information about each group. See Group Tracker for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request passcode to register:</td>
<td>If enabled, the user must enter a passcode before they can register. You can create any alphanumeric passcode. You will have to inform users of this passcode before they can register. This can be used in sites where users are invited or they receive a passcode after paying a fee or something like that. Semi-private or semi-public sites may enjoy this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevent automatic/robot registration:</td>
<td>Register with Passcode. If enabled, Tiki will display a CAPTCHA on the registration form to prevent spambots from registering. You must have the GD Image Processing library installed on your server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register with Antibot code</td>
<td>If enabled, the user's email address will be used as their login. On the registration form, there will be no <strong>Username</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use login as email:</td>
<td><strong>Register with Email as Login.</strong> If enabled, Tiki will send an email message to the user. The message contains a link that must be clicked to validate the registration. After clicking the link, the user will be validated. You can use this option to limit false registrations or fake email addresses. <strong>Note:</strong> Your Tiki must have access to the php (@mail) function to send the registration email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate users by emails:</td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Some web servers may disable this functionality, thereby disabling this feature. If you are not in a high security site or if you are on an open users site, do not use this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate users email server:</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will attempt to validate the user's email address by examining the syntax of the email address. It must be a string of letters, or digits or _ or . or - follows by a @ follows by a string of letters, or digits or _ or . or -. Tiki will perform a DNS lookup and attempt to open a SMTP session to validate the email server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remind passwords by email:</td>
<td>If enabled, the <strong>I forgot my password</strong> will be displayed in the Login module. If a user forgets their password or username, they can reset their account by entering either their username or email address. Tiki will send the user an email with their email or instructions on resetting their password (depending on the setting of the Store plainword passwords setting).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store plaintext passwords</td>
<td>If enabled, the email generated by the Remind passwords by email setting will include the user's password in plaintext. If disabled, the email will include a link that will allow the user to select a new password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crypt password method</td>
<td>Specify how Tiki encrypts passwords in the database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered Users can change password.</td>
<td>If this is enabled, registered users can change their password from their User Preferences page. If not, passwords can be changed only by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reg users can change theme</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, registered users can select their own theme from their User Preferences page. Click on Restrict Available Themes to select the themes you want to make available to the user. Note: Tiki determines the available themes by the .CSS files in your ../styles directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reg users can change language</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, registered users can select their own interface language from their User Preferences page. Click on Restrict Available Languages to select the themes you want to make available to the user. Note: Tiki determines the available languages by the .PHP files in your ../lang directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum and Maximum username length:</strong></td>
<td>The minimum (default = 1) and maximum (default = 50) number of characters for a valid username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Force lowercase username:</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will automatically convert all alphabetic characters in the username to all lowercase letters. For example JohnDoe becomes johndoe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use challenge-response authentication</strong></td>
<td>If enabled and the user's browser supports JavaScript, passwords ARE NOT SENT across the network. Instead, a challenge response algorithm is used. Tiki generates a challenge code and the browser sends a response based on the challenge that Tiki verifies to login the user. Challenge responses cannot be reused. This method, if enabled, strongly enforces the security of your user passwords. If you use this option, you don't need an HTTPs connection for extra security. The drawback to this method is that users will have to enter their email address every time they login — three boxes to fill in not two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Force to use chars and numbers in passwords:</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will require user passwords to contain both letters and numbers. Use this option to force users to select stronger passwords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum Password Length:</strong></td>
<td>Select the minimum number of characters for user passwords. The default 1. Increase this option to force users to select stronger passwords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password invalid after days:</strong></td>
<td>The number of days after which a password will expire. Days are counted starting with the user's first login. When the password expires, users will be forced to select a new password when logging in. Note: In version 1.9.8.3, use <strong>999</strong> to never expire. In version 2.0 use <strong>-1</strong> to never expire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Re-validate users by email after days:</strong></td>
<td>The number of days after which an email will be sent to the user with a link to revalidate the account. The user will not be able to login (that is, the account will be invalid), until the user clicks the link. Use this feature to verify that a user's email is still valid. Use <strong>-1</strong> to never re-validate users. This feature was introduced in release 2.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Re-validate user by email after unsuccessful logins:</strong></td>
<td>The number of unsuccessful login attempts after which Tiki will &quot;lock&quot; the account and attempt to re-validate the user by email. Use this feature to protect user accounts against brute-force attacks. Use <strong>-1</strong> to disable this feature. This feature was introduced in release 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Generate a password option:</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will include a button on the registration form that will automatically generate a very secure password for the user. Note: The generated password may not include any restrictions (such as minimum/maximum length). This feature was introduced in 2.0. In earlier versions, the Generate button was always displayed on the registration form. Specify if Tiki supports secure (HTTPS) logins. Choose between: <strong>Disabled</strong> <strong>Allow</strong> <strong>Encourage</strong> <strong>Consider always</strong> <strong>Require</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HTTPS Login:</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, the Login module will include links for <strong>Secure</strong> or <strong>Standard</strong> login. Login module with HTTPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HTTP Port and URL:</strong></td>
<td>If HTTPS is enabled, include the URL and port for your HTTPS server. For example, if you access your site as <a href="http://tikiwiki.org:2038">http://tikiwiki.org:2038</a>, enter the port here. Use this option to have Tiki remember users. They will automatically be logged in if they leave, then return to the site. Choose between: Disabled User’s choice Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remember me feature:</strong></td>
<td>You can define the duration (length of time) that Tiki will &quot;remember&quot; the user. If &quot;User's Choice&quot; the Login module will include a &quot;Remember me&quot; checkbox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remember me name:</strong></td>
<td>Filename of the cookie placed on users computer. Example: yourdomain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remember me domain:</strong></td>
<td>Domain name for the Tiki site. Example: .yourdomain.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remember me path:</strong></td>
<td>Path to your TikiWiki installation, if not in root directory. The path is appended to the domain. Example: /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protect against CSRF with a confirmation step:</strong></td>
<td>Enable this option to protect your site against Cross Site scripting (CSRF), a common method of hacking a site. If Tiki detects a possible CSRF attack, a confirmation prompt will be displayed to verify that the action is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protect against CSRF with a ticket:</strong></td>
<td><em>What is this setting used for?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Highlight Group:</strong></td>
<td>Help <em>What is this setting used for?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User can choose their group at registration time:</strong></td>
<td>Use this feature to allow a new user to select a group to join, as part of the registration process. The groups you select here will be displayed on the registration form. This feature was introduced in release 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display user's contribution in the user page:</strong></td>
<td>If enabled, the user's User Information page will display a list of all objects (such as wiki pages, image galleries, etc.) that the user has edited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Tracker Information on User page:</td>
<td>If enabled, displays UserTracker informations in user information page. Format: trackerId,fieldId1,fieldId2,...:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate login autocomplete</td>
<td>Use to deactivate the autocomplete in the login box. The autocomplete features can be optionally set in the user's browser to remember the form input and proposes the remember the password. If enabled, the user login and password can not be remembered. You should enable this feature for highly secure sites. This feature was introduced in release 2.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On permission denied, display login box:</td>
<td>If an anonymous visitor attempts to display a page that they do not have permission to view, Tiki will display the Login module. This allows the visitor to login, then display the page. This feature was introduced in release 2.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On permission denied, send to this URL:</td>
<td>If a user attempts to display a page that they do not have permission to view, Tiki will forward the user to the specified URL. This feature was introduced in release 2.0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Case Sensitivity

- Starting with Release 2.0, the login (username) is case insensitive. Users can complete the Login module or Forgot Password screen using any case. After logging in, the user's login (username) is shown in its original case.
- In earlier releases, the login (username) is case sensitive.
- For backwards compatibility, if two users have identical logins with different cases, they must always log in using their case sensitive login.
- The password is always case sensitive.

Remember Me

- When enabled, you can manage the amount of time that the system "remembers" a user, keeping the user logged in. Without a rememberme cookie, the session finishes when the php session end. A session can finish because the idle time has been reached or the user closes their browser (or tab in the browser, depending on the browser).
- The session length is set by the session.gc_maxlifetime setting in the php.ini file. If allowed by your host, you can overwrite this by using the Session Lifetime in Minutes field.

Be careful: Sometimes other application running on the same server can redefine the session length and if your session saves the session files in the same place than tikiwiki, you can have interference.
- With a remember me cookie, you can extend the time the system remembers a user (if the user allows cookies and does not limit the cookie to the session time). This time is set in admin->login. When a user checks remember me checkbox, the browser creates a cookie with a name beginning with 'tiki-user-' followed by the rememberme name you gave in admin->login.
- The rememberme feature allows you also to be able to close the browser and to be still logged in when you reopen the browser (if the timeout is not reached).
- In Release 2.0, this cookie is secure. The value does not contain the username or password. The value is a value saved in the database that is matched to find out the user name when the php session has expired. The cookie is deleted when you log-out. In tikiwiki >= 1.10, the remember me can be always activated (admin->login).
- If the user changes their IP or browser, the Remember Me feature will fail.

Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity

You can change in .htaccess (or php.ini) the parameters: session.gc_maxlifetime, session.gc_probability and session.gc_divisor.
CustomFields

A rudimentary capability exists to add additional text fields to the User Preferences page. This might be used for fields like:

- Home_Phone
- AIM (or other IM handles)
- Address
- Professional_Certs

In order to add a new field, you must insert a record into the tiki_user_preferences table manually (via phpMyadmin or...). Use a command similar to the following:

```sql
insert into tiki_user_preferences values('CustomFields','Home_Phone',NULL);
```

The values of the 3 fields are:

1. must be 'CustomFields'
2. descriptive label - this is what shows on screen as the field label
3. default value - NULL means no default, a string here will put that value in the field for the user to edit.

Limits

1. At this time, there is no web page to create the actual field definitions, you must use the SQL statement shown above.
2. No spaces are allowed in the label, an underscore can be used instead.
3. There is no support for anything other than plain text fields
4. Possible security issue - if a user registers with the name 'CustomFields', they could possibly change the default values, or cause other problems. Possible workaround - create your own user with that name and don't use it for anything.
5. The created fields are informational only, they don't hook into anything useful inside Tiki.

LDAP Authentication tab

Overview

Tiki can authenticate users using a LDAP server

Related Topics

- Support forum
- Bug reports and feature requests

To Access

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://tiki.org), Page 66
From the Login Admin page, click the LDAP tab.

LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4

Changes

The LDAP Authentication part has been rewritten in Tiki 4. Tiki no more uses PEARs Auth due to the lack of flexibility and missing features - PEARs Auth is not intended to be able to fetch any other LDAP entries than the user entry. Now it uses PEAR LDAP2.

List of changes:

• The words "PEAR Auth" and "Auth" have been replaced by "LDAP" in code and web front-end
• A proxy user (LDAP admin) is no more needed to authenticate
• You can add more redundant LDAP servers in your configuration
• The use of SSL or TLS is supported now (needs some more testing)
• You can specify the type of LDAP Server (Active Directory, OpenLDAP, ...)
• User and Group information can be replicated to Tiki on every user login. Therefore you can reuse data already present in your LDAP directory.
• Users replicated from LDAP have now disabled Tiki passwords to avoid having ghost users in Tiki that are deleted in LDAP.

How it works

If a user enters his username and password in Tiki, a binddn is created and together with the password used to authenticate the user at the LDAP server. Once authenticated the user is allowed to read data from the LDAP server. Especially he usually can read his own data and the LDAP group information. These data are used to create the user and group in Tiki. The user has the Tiki password disabled. He only can login via LDAP. On subsequent logins, the data are synchronized from LDAP to Tiki (not the other direction!). The replicated data can be at the moment:
• Users full name
• Users email address
• Users country information
• Users group membership
• Group name and description

So if you change any of the above information in LDAP, the data are synchronized the next time the user logs into Tiki. You can even change group membership in LDAP and it gets synchronized to Tiki. What is not replicated to Tiki are object (user/group) deletions.

Group membership and permissions

One useful use of LDAP with groups is to give users from specific groups more permissions. Since every user created in Tiki is assigned to the build in group "Registered", you should give "Registered" the same permissions like "Anonymous". You may want to give some LDAP usergroups special permissions. Let one user of that group login to Tiki to automatically create the group. Then assign permissions to that group.

How anonymous binding works

- connect anonymously to the LDAP server
- get the user DN
- authenticate the user by binding with the server as DN + password

Settings

Create user if not in Tiki?
If a user was authenticated via LDAP, but not found in the Tiki user database, Tiki will create an entry in its user database if this option is checked. If this option is disabled, this user wouldn't be able to log in.

Create user if not in LDAP?
If a user was authenticated by Tiki's user database, but not found on the LDAP server, Tiki will create an LDAP entry for this user. As of time of writing, this is not yet implemented, and this option will probably no more offered in future.

Use Tiki authentication for Admin login
If this option is set, the user "admin" will be authenticated by only using Tiki's user database and not via LDAP. This option has no effect on users other than "admin".

Use Tiki authentication for users created in LDAP
If this option is set, users that are created using Tiki are not authenticated via LDAP.
Tiki Reference Guide

Tiki

The hostnames, ip addresses or URIs of your LDAP servers. Separate multiple entries with Whitespace or ",". If you use URIs, then the settings for Port number and SSL are ignored. Example: "localhost ldaps://master.ldap.mydomain.org:63636" will try to connect to localhost unencrypted and if if fails it will try the master LDAP server at a special port with SSL.

Port

The port number your LDAP server uses (389 is the default, 636 if you check SSL).

Write LDAP debug Information in Tiki Logs

Write debug information to tiki logs. For production sites uncheck this!

LDAP Bind Type

Here you can control how your bind DN is constructed.

Search Scope

Search scope (base = Base object search, one = one-level search, sub = Subtree search (default) ) used after authentication for getting user and group information

LDAP Version

Usually 3

Base DN

Base DN of the LDAP server. Gets appended to bind DN, user DN and group DN. Example: dc=my-company,dc=com

User DN

RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: ou=People will search in ou=People,dc=my-company,dc=com

User attribute

Attribute that contains the username. (Note: for Active Directory try UserAttribute: sAMAccountName)

User OC

Object class an entry must have when searching for a user. This is mandatory! If you dont know what to fill in, use * (an asterix)

Realname attribute

Attribute that holds the real name of the user.

Country attribute

Attribute that holds the country information of the user.

E-mail attribute

Attribute that holds the email of the user.

Group DN

RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example:
ou=Groups will search in ou=Groups,dc=my-company,dc=com

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group Attribute</td>
<td>Attribute that contains the group name. Example cn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Description</td>
<td>Attribute that contains the group description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group OC</td>
<td>Objectclass used to create groups. Example <strong>groupOfUniqueNames</strong> would result in a group search using the filter (objectclass=groupOfUniqueNames)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Attribute</td>
<td>Attribute used to retrieve group members. Example <strong>uniqueMember</strong> will result in retrieval of all uniqueMembers from a groupOfUniqueNames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Is DN</td>
<td>Defines whether member attribute retrieved using LDAP Member Attribute is full DN (y/n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group attribute in</td>
<td>If the members of a group cannot be found in the group entry, then use this user entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group attribute in</td>
<td>Usually empty. Used to search the group entries. Usually the same like the line group entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Admin User</td>
<td>DN of the entry to use to bind to the LDAP server for user creation. While authentication works without binding as a privileged DN, creation of an entry usually does not. This admin DN is only used when creating user entries on the LDAP server (i.e. only if the option <strong>Create user if not in Auth</strong> is checked). Authentication works without an admin DN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Admin Pwd</td>
<td>Password for the above DN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use**

- Active Directory bind method will build a RDN like **username@domain.com** where your basedn is (dc=domain, dc=com) and username is your username
- Plain bind method will build a RDN username
- Full bind method will build a RDN like userattr=username, userdn, basedn where userattr is replaced with the value you put in 'User attribute', userdn with the value you put in 'User DN', basedn with the value with the value you put in 'base DN'
- Openldap bind method will build a RDN like cn=username, basedn
- anonymous bind method will build an empty RDN

If you do not know, the best is to use a tool to access the directory like Apache Directory Studio
If you can enter your directory with your email, it is probably an Active Directory
If you can access with your username, it can be plain, full, or openldap
After with your tool navigate to select a user, the DN of the user will be shown and you will be able to guess the method

Some tips:
- You can not build a RDN/DN like this "sAMAccountName=username,dc=domain,dc=com". If you would like to do so because the CN is the real name and not the username, it is probably because you have choosen the wrong bind method (it can be an active directory method)
- Use always he search scope subtree at the beginning - as soon as you are sure of your parameters use antoher method for performance

How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki

Tiki builds another DN to get the attributes. This time, Tiki uses a search and not a bind. The DN is userattr=username, userdn, basedn where userattr is the attribute you put in 'User Attribute', username is the username, userdn the value you put in 'User DN' and basedn is the value you put in basedn. This time you can use sAMAccountName in the attribute (it is a search not a bind).
Then put the attribute name you see in the DN taht contains the mail

Examples

Unix

These settings should work on most Unix systems that use LDAP for authentication and as information store:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LDAP Bind Type</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>dc=yourdomain,dc=tld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>ou=users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User attribute</td>
<td>uid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User OC</td>
<td>inetOrgPerson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Realname attribute</td>
<td>cn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-Mail attribute</td>
<td>mail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Group DN: ou=usergroups
Group attribute: cn
Group OC: groupOfNames
Member attribute: member
Member is DN: yes

Active Directory
LDAP Bind Type: Active Directory
Base DN: dc=yourdomain,dc=tld
User DN: cn=users
User attribute: sAMAccountName
User OC: user
Realname attribute: displayName
E-Mail attribute: probably userPrincipalName - not sure if you use exchange

Group DN
Group attribute: cn
Group OC: group
Member attribute: member
Member is DN: yes
**Zimbra LDAP**

LDAP Bind Type  Default

Base DN      dc=domain,dc=com

User DN      ou=people

User attribute  uid

User OC      *

Realname attribute  displayName

E-mail attribute  mail

Further Instructions  [http://wiki.zimbra.com](http://wiki.zimbra.com)

**Debugging**

Check the box at "Write LDAP debug Information in Tiki Logs:" and try to authenticate in another browser. Check Tiki Logs (tiki-syslog.php) to see what went wrong.

**ATTENTION**: Uncheck the debug settings once you managed to set up your connection. Your logs will get flooded else!

If this even does not help, you can use this code to check what's wrong:

Idap connect test

```php
<?php
$con = ldap_connect('ldap://my_hostname:389');
lap_set_option(NULL, LDAP_OPT_DEBUG_LEVEL, 7);
lap_set_option($con, LDAP_OPT_PROTOCOL_VERSION, 3);
lap_set_option($con, LDAP_OPT_REFERRALS, false);
$dn = 'cn=username,dc=domain,dc=tld';
if(lap_bind($con, $dn,'verrry_secret')) {
    echo "connc succeeded";
    // and if you want to test the mail
    $filter = '(objectClass=*)';
    $just = array('mail'); // adapt the attribute name
    $sr = lap_search($con, $dn, $filter, $just);
    $info = lap_get_entries($con, $sr);
```
```
print_r($info);
} else {
    echo "Oops!";
}
?>
```

Replace Hostname, Port, binddn and password and run it with php connect.php

Present the output your LDAP Administrator.

Useful tool: Apache Directory studio

Common Problems and Workarounds

Certificate Problems

If you use certificates on LDAP server side where the root certificate is not trusted, you should put the root or CA certificate somewhere at your tiki webserver and let /etc/openldap/ldap.conf know where it is. Use parameters TLS_CACERTDIR and TLS_CACERT to point it to the root or CA certificate.

If you use self signed certificates you can also simply disable certificate checking by setting TLS_REQCERT to "never" in /etc/openldap/ldap.conf.

See the manpage of "ldap.conf" to get more information.

LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X

LDAP Pear::Auth General Settings Overview

Tiki can authenticate users using a LDAP server via Pear::Auth (see [http://pear.php.net/package-info.php?package=Auth](http://pear.php.net/package-info.php?package=Auth)) . The following settings only make sense, if you have set "Authentication method" to "Tiki/Pear::Auth " in the above dialog. Tiki then uses the LDAP server in addition to its own user database (users_users) to authenticate users. Your Php must have ldap support on (debian: php4-ldap, php5-ldap, ....)
Create user if not in Tiki?
If a user was authenticated via LDAP, but not found in the Tiki user database, Tiki will create an entry in its user database if this option is checked. **If this option is disabled, this user wouldn't be able to log in**

Create user if not in Auth?
If a user was authenticated by Tiki's user database, but not found on the LDAP server, Tiki will create an LDAP entry for this user. See Pear::Auth on how an entry is created.

Just use tiki auth for admin?
If this option is set, the user "admin" will be authenticated by only using Tiki's user database and not via LDAP. This option has no effect on users other than "admin".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Host</td>
<td>The hostname or ip address of your LDAP server (usually localhost).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Port</td>
<td>The port number your LDAP server uses (389 is the default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Scope</td>
<td>Search scope (base = Base object search, one = one-level search, sub = Subtree search (default) ) used during authentication for finding a user on the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Base DN</td>
<td>Base DN of the LDAP server. If you leave this empty, Pear::Auth will try to query your LDAP server for its base DN. Example: <code>dc=my-company,dc=com</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP User DN</td>
<td>RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <code>ou=People</code> will search in <code>ou=People,dc=my-company,dc=com</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP User attribute</td>
<td>Attribute that contains the username. (Note: for Active Directory try UserAttribute: sAMAccountName)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP User OC</td>
<td>Object class an entry must have when searching for a user. This is mandatory! If you don't know what to fill in, use * (an asterix)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP Group DN</td>
<td>RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <code>ou=Groups</code> will search in <code>ou=Groups,dc=my-company,dc=com</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LDAP Group Attribute

Attribute that contains the group name. Example `cn`

LDAP Group OC

Objectclass used to create groups. Example `groupOfUniqueNames` would result in a group search using the filter (objectclass=groupOfUniqueNames)

LDAP Member Attribute

Attribute used to retrieve group members. Example `uniqueMember` will result in retrieval of all uniqueMembers from a groupOfUniqueNames

LDAP Member Is DN

Defines whether member attribute retrieved using LDAP Member Attribute is full DN (y/n)

DN of the entry to use to bind to the LDAP server for user creation. While authentication works without binding as a privileged DN, creation of an entry usually does not. This admin DN is only used when creating user entries on the LDAP server (i.e. only if the option Create user if not in Auth is checked). Authentication works without an admin DN (Pear::Auth will try to bind using the username/password to authenticate). Note: When using Active Directory as the LDAP server, you usually have to specify an Admin user/PW. This is due to AD's default restriction that doesn't allow anonymous searches. In this case the user does not need to be an administrative user. A regular user account will suffice.

LDAP Admin User

Password for the above DN.

LDAP Version

Usually 3

The LDAP Group and LDAP Member settings are currently not used by Tiki (as of 1.10 rc).

If your admin page does not contain all the fields listed above, reference LDAPUseInPriorVersions for information on how to modify versions of Tiki prior to 1.9.8 to use LDAP.

LDAP Pear::Auth Troubleshooting

You can verify your connection by editing the file `tiki/lib/pear/Auth/Container/LDAP.php` in line 441 (for `tw < 4`) from
$this->options['debug'] = false;

to

$this->options['debug'] = true;

After the login you see a screen with a successful binding to the AD/LDAP-Server

281: Connecting with host:port
288: Successfully connected to server
292: Switching to LDAP version 3
306: Switching LDAP referrals to true
312: Binding with credentials
325: Binding was successful
548: UTF8 encoding username for LDAPv3
574: Searching with ldap_search and filter (&(sAMAccountName=exampleuser)(objectClass=*)) in ou=europe,dc=xnet,dc=oe,dc=examplehost
581: User was found
636: Bind as CN=exampleuser,OU=users,OU=ode,OU=europe,DC=xnet,DC=oe,DC=examplehost
640: Bind successful
650: Authenticated

Be aware that after your troubleshooting you must switch off the debug option to login.
Aliases

- LDAP
- AD
- Active Directory

PAM Authentication tab

Overview
Tiki can authenticate users using a PAM server

To Access
From the Login Admin page, click the PAM tab.

AuthPAM

AuthPAM provides PAM authentication to Tikiwiki just as Pear Auth does with LDAP.
It's mainly intended for those tiki admins who have integrated their Linux boxes onto their network's authentication using PAM;
For example, admins might have their Linux boxes authenticate through PAM to their Windows 2000 Active Directory Domain (via winbind and kerberos 5) so with AuthPAM then, they can authenticate their networked users against tiki without adding them by hand

Admin Documentation

AuthPAMOld configuration is very simple once you've met all the requirements (only a few). Once met you just have to go to the Login section of TikiAdmin.
There will be a nice option onto 'Method' called 'Tiki and PAM' (which you should select if you plan to use it!). Then at the bottom of the screen there are a few options for AuthPAM. You can see:

- Create user if not in Tiki?: Check this if you want Tiki to add users authenticated through PAM but who are not onto it's internal database.
- Use tiki for admin only?: That's to make tiki authenticate the user 'admin' with its internal
system, not PAM. If you don't select this option you'll have to add a system user called 'admin'.

- PAM Service (currently unused): Here you should specify which pam service should Tiki authenticate against but these is now disabled due a lack of the auth_pam php module.

Requirements for AuthPAM

**AuthPAMOld** has a small requirement that must be met in order to work; you need pam_auth php module. I've seen it's on some Linux distributions but not on all. On the main page AuthPAM Link's section you can get the link to the author's home to get the module and compile it if your distribution doesn't include a binary package.

After compiling and installing the module as stated in its documentation you have to create a PAM service for Tiki (normally at /etc/pam.d).

Then just jump onto Tikiwiki and setup PAM there.

Permissions!

Take care of file permissions; remember that php runs with apache privileges, normally a normal user account like www-data or so. If you plan to use PAM against your system's users and your system uses shadowed password you should remember that /etc/shadow is only readable by root, so php won't be able to read it (the PAM library runs with the calling user privileges), so you'll have to workaround it, maybe letting your web server's user read shadow file or so.

Security Issues

With a default PAM service any account will be granted (try user: nobody ) so here are a few things to take care about that:

It is recommended that you make use of **pam_require** module to require a specific group to be in for the user. Also you can take a look at **PAM Modules at kernel.org** to refine a bit more your pam service for tiki.

Also take note that pam only receives a user/pass pair and checks it; it relays on your web server settings to handle a secure transaction of that pair from the browser to the server. SSL is recommended.
Shibboleth Authentication for TikiWiki

To Enable Shibboleth Authentication you will need to Do 2 main Steps.

Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki

To enable Shibboleth authentication within the Wiki goto the Admin page and in dropdown box select Shibboleth

When Selected Goto the bottom to the Shibboleth Settings.

Below is a table of the options and what they do.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create user if not in Tiki?</td>
<td>This option Creates a user when the user has logged in using Shibboleth but is not in the Wiki.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Just use Tiki auth for admin&gt;</td>
<td>Used to allow admin to login via shibboleth (Not recomended) or just useing the tiki Auth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Affiliaitions</td>
<td>A comma seperated list of affiliations wich will allow users to loginto this Wiki.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create with a default group</td>
<td>If selected a default group will be created (If no group is specified a default of Shibboleth will be used)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Group</td>
<td>the name of the defalt group. If none Shibboleth will be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the above is completed the wiki is ready to use shibboleth as an authentication source. You will now need to ensure that shibboleth is setup correctly.

Below are the files that were modified to enable Shibboleth Authentication;

- lib/userslib.php
- templates/modules/mod-login_box.tpl
• templates/tiki-admin-include-login.tpl
• tiki-admin_include_login.php
• tiki-setup_base.php

Below is a table of these files and a description of the changes;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>userslib.php</td>
<td>This is used to validate a shibboleth user, changes have been made to the validate_user function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiki-admin-include-login.tpl</td>
<td>This file needs to be changed to display &quot;Login through Shibboleth login box when not logged in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiki-admin-include-login.tpl</td>
<td>This file needs to be changed to display the Shibboleth options in the Login Admin page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiki-admin_include_login.php</td>
<td>This file changes will process the new values in the Login Admin page above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiki-setup_base.php</td>
<td>This page will need to be changed to ensure the shibboleth user is validated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth

To enable the wiki to be protected by Shibboleth you will need to add the following to your apache conf.

```
<Location /tikiwiki/tiki-login_scr.php>
  AuthType shibboleth
  ShibRequireSession On
  ShibRequireAll On
  require valid-user
</Location>
```

The other thing you will need to do is update your Shibboleth Service Providers AAP (Attribute Assertion Policy) AAP.XML.

Below are the Attributes required by the Tikiwiki Auth and the required Header values;

```
<AttributeRule Name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:eduPersonPrincipalName" Scoped="false"
```
CAS Authentication tab

Overview

Central Authentication Service (http://www.jasig.org/products/cas/) is a Web Initial Sign-on (WebISO) system designed by Yale ITS.

Related Topics

• External Authentication

To Access

From the Login Admin page, click the CAS tab.

Note

CAS Authentication was introduced in Tiki5

SCREEN SHOT, thumbnail at 300px
Intro

Central Authentication Service (http://www.ja-sig.org/products/cas/) is a Web Initial Sign-on (WebISO) system designed by Yale ITS. CAS facilitates single sign-on across multiple web applications and provides these web services with the ability to authenticate users without having access to their passwords. From an end-user point of view, all protected pages show a standardized CAS challenge page where the user types in their NetID (a unique username of sorts assigned to everyone affiliated with Yale) and password.

Much to our delight, we were able to make Tiki interface with CAS without any customization. Yale ITS provides mod_cas, an Apache modules that protect webpages through CAS. Since mod_cas is an Apache module, it behaves like standard HTTP authentication. Tikiwiki supports HTTP authentication. When a user is logged in through HTTP authentication, and the username matches one of the usernames in the Tikiwiki database, Tikiwiki automatically logs the user in. That way, when a user logs in through CAS, Tikiwiki matches the NetID (username) of the user with a pre-created account in its database, and logs the user in.

(Taken from the YaleUniversityITS Case Study.)

Mod phpcas

phpCAS documentation can be found at http://www.ja-sig.org/wiki/display/CASC/phpCAS

general info about CAS: http://www.jasig.org/cas

This is a stub. In Tiki5, it will become a native feature of Tiki. But for now, this mods is currently difficult to install.

See bug report: 
http://dev.tikiwiki.org/tiki-view_tracker_item.php?itemId=1229&trackerId=5 
and installation notes below.

Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)

Make the following modifications to install CAS support successfully on 2.0RC4.
(Note: These are rough notes--they need confirmation and cleaning up into proper documentation.)

File tikiwiki/mods/Packages/features-phpcas.info.txt 
Change to remove the line:

features/phpcas/source/CAS/PGTStorage lib/phpcas/source/CAS/PGTStorage

(This will allow the install to complete successfully--otherwise you get an error.)
File tikiwiki/lib/userslib.php
Comment out lines 290-292 to remove min password length check.
(On advice from the comments on the bug linked above.)

If you want to get a log of what phpCAS is doing, in the same file, change line 716 from:

    phpCAS::setDebug('');

to:

    phpCAS::setDebug('phpcas_debug.log');

The logfile will be created in your top-level tikiwiki directory.
(Can be helpful if CAS isn't working right--lets you see more of what's happening.)

File tikiwiki/tiki-setup_base.php
Change line 229 from:

    $vartype['user'] = '+string'; // remind password page

to

    $vartype['user'] = 'string'; // remind password page

(This will remove the requirement that the "user" variable be defined--for CAS logins, it's not defined until after the authentication takes place.)

Install

See Mods Admin for instructions on how to install a Mod.

Related pages
This authentication backend allows you to authenticate users against a phpBB database.
• General Preferences
  • Case Sensitivity
  • Remember Me
  • Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity
  • CustomFields
• LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4
  • Changes
  • How it works
    • Group membership and permissions
    • How anonymous binding works
  • Settings
    • How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use
    • How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki
• Examples
  • Unix
  • Active Directory
  • Zimbra LDAP
• Debugging
• Common Problems and Workarounds
  • Certificate Problems
• LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X
  • LDAP Authentication tab
• Aliases
  • AuthPAM
    • Admin Documentation
    • Requirements for AuthPAM
    • Permissions!
    • Security Issues
• PAM Authentication tab
  • Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
  • Intro
    • Mod phpcas
  • Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
  • Install
• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
Requirements for phpBB Authentication

This Authentication backend only works against phpBB version 3.x, also known as phpBB3. It won't work against phpBB2 due to a different password hashing algorithm.

Enabling phpBB Authentication

To Enable phpBB Authentication you will need to do the following three steps:

phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication

To enable phpBB Authentication within the Wiki goto the Admin page (Login section - icon of a door and arrow) and in dropdown box select phpBB:

phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration

Make sure that Registration is turned off:

User registration is handled in the phpBB software.

phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options

Goto the phpBB tab:

You need to provide the database hostname, user, password, database name and table prefix (if any).

Below is a table of the options and what they do.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 87
Create user if not in Tiki?

This option creates a user when the user has logged in using phpBB but is not in the Wiki.

Use Tiki authentication for Admin login

Use Tiki Auth for Admin login (Recommended).

Disable Tiki users who doesn't have a phpBB login.

Select to disable Tiki users who doesn't have a phpBB login, due to account deletion. (Recommended)

When the above is completed the wiki is ready to use phpBB as an authentication source. You will now need to ensure that phpBB is setup correctly. You can do that easily by logging in using a phpBB username/password, and try to log in with a non-existing user, and/or wrong password.

---

Table of contents:

---

Community Administration

Overview

Related Topics

- User Preferences
- MyTiki
- Bugs and Wishes
Use to configure general user features and friendship network settings

To access

Click the Community icon on the Admin Panel or Access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=community

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:

- User Features
- Community General Settings
- Friendship Network

User Features tab

Related Topics

- MyTiki
Overview
Use to specify which features should be enabled regarding users

To Access
From the Community Admin page, click the User Features tab.

No Tabs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display MyTiki in the Application Menu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Notepad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Contacts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Watches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Watches Translations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Tasks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Files</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Alert</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini Calendar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Preferences Screen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Bookmarks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Watches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Reports for User Watches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Menu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Messages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu User Levels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users can Change Theme</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share access rights with friends</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User's page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Transitions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**User Features**

- Display 'MyTiki' in the application menu Mini Calendar
- User Preferences Screen User Notepad
- User Bookmarks User Contacts
User Watches

Group Watches

Daily Reports for User Watches

User Watches Translations

User Menu

User Tasks

User Messages

User Files

User Levels

Group Alert

Users can change theme

Share access rights with friends

Community General Settings Tab

Overview

Related Topics

• User Preferences
• MyTiki
Use to specify which information (as defined on the user's MyTiki preferences) appears when a user's "mouse-overs" the name of another user.

**To Access**
From the Community Admin page, click the General Preferences tab.
### General Settings tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fieldset or section</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's real name instead of login (when possible)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's contribution on the user information page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display UserTracker information on the user information page</td>
<td>Use the format: trackerId, fieldId1, fieldId2, ... (Requires Use tracker to collect more user information)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of days to consider who viewed my stuff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show to others who viewed my stuff on the user information page</td>
<td>(Requires Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store full-size copy of avatar in file gallery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File gallery to store full-size copy of avatar in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Community</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users can choose to show their gender</td>
<td>Requires User Preferences Screen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's information on mouseover</td>
<td>Requires user's information to be public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select which fields appear: Real name, Gender, Picture (avatar), Number of friends, Score</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country, E-mail, Last login, Distance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default user preferences</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character set for mail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of visited pages to remember</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displayed time zone</td>
<td>Select if dates and times for users are shown using the site's default, or if Tiki should attempt to detect the user's timezone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User information</strong></td>
<td>Specify if users' information is <strong>Public</strong> or <strong>Private</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use double-click to edit pages</td>
<td>If enabled, users can edit wiki pages by double-clicking on the page instead of using the Edit button or icon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's info on mouseover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tasks per page</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User messages</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages per page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow messages from other users</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify sender when reading mail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send me an email for messages with priority equal or greater than</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-archive read messages after</td>
<td>Number of days after which Tiki will archive users' read messages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Tiki</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My pages</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all wiki pages edited by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My blogs</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all blogs and blog posts edited by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My galleries</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all galleries edited by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My messages</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all messages and replies by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My tasks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My forum topics</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all forum topics by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My forum replies</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all forum replies by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My items</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will list all tracker items by the user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

___Fieldset or section___

Show user's real name instead of login (when possible)

Highlight group

Show user's contribution on the user information page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display UserTracker information on the user information page</td>
<td>Use the format: trackerId, fieldId1, fieldId2, ... (Requires Use tracker to collect more user information)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of days to consider who viewed my stuff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show to others who viewed my stuff on the user information page (Requires Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store full-size copy of avatar in file gallery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File gallery to store full-size copy of avatar in <strong>Community</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users can choose to show their gender</td>
<td>Requires User Preferences Screen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's information on mouseover</td>
<td>Select which fields appear: Real name, Gender, Picture (avatar), Number of friends, Score</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country, E-mail, Last login, Distance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong><strong>Default user preferences</strong></strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong><strong>Default user preferences</strong></strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character set for mail</td>
<td></td>
<td>Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of visited pages to remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displayed timezone</td>
<td>Select if dates and times for users are shown using the site's default, or if Tiki should attempt to detect the user's timezone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User information</td>
<td>Specify if users' information is <strong><strong>Public</strong></strong> or <strong><strong>Private</strong></strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use double-click to edit pages</td>
<td>If enabled, users can edit wiki pages by double-clicking on the page instead of using the Edit button or icon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's info on mouseover</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tasks per page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong><strong>User messages</strong></strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong><strong>User messages</strong></strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages per page</td>
<td></td>
<td>Allow messages from other users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify sender when reading mail</td>
<td>Send me an email for messages with priority equal or greater than</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-archive read messages after</td>
<td>Number of days after which Tiki will archive users' read messages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

__My Tiki__

My pages | If enabled, Tiki will list all wiki pages edited by the user |
My blogs | If enabled, Tiki will list all blogs and blog posts edited by the user |
My galleries | If enabled, Tiki will list all galleries edited by the user |
My messages | If enabled, Tiki will list all messages and replies by the user |
My tasks |
My forum topics | If enabled, Tiki will list all forum topics by the user |
My forum replies | If enabled, Tiki will list all forum replies by the user |
My items | If enabled, Tiki will list all tracker items by the user |
User Identity |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show user's info</td>
<td>Specify if a popup box appears when you mouseover a user's name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Show the user's Real Name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>Show the user's Avatar.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of friends</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Score</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Show the user's Country.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail</td>
<td>Show the user's Email, if is is public.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last login</td>
<td>Show the date of the user's Last login.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Show the approximate distance between you and the user, if both of you have completed the Longitude and Latitude fields in your User Preferences.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Friendship Network tab

Related Topics

- [Friendster-like features](http://tiki.org/post)
- [CommunityConnections](http://tiki.org/page)
Overview
Use to create a system where users can become connected

To Access
From the Community Admin page, click the Friendship Network tab.

No Tabs
6.x 3.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Friendship Network</td>
<td>If enabled, select which items to display when listing users: Name, Score, Country, and Distance. You can also specify the order in which to display users.</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is a brief idea about the ))FriendsNetwork((

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://tiki.org), Page 103
General Description

The Friendship Network is a system where we may ask our fellow Tiki users to be part of our direct contacts. Helping to create a connected community.

Key Function and sub-features

Allows members to request communication. If the request is answered then you will be added to the persons "Friends" list.

- A new menu "Community" is created, with the correct perms this allows you to see the member list.
- A sub menu "Friendship Network" takes you to your friend list.
- Posts by your friends will have a friend icon
- At the users profile there is a "This user is your friend" note.

Typical Uses

This could be used in a large community to help get people connected.
Used in conjunction with the trackers this could be a powerful way for people to connect.

- Arranging events
- Finding friends

When invited into a user's network, you will receive a Tiki Message (in your MyTiki area, similar to the following:

From: Webkeeper
To: jamesoftopiya
You're invited to join my network of friends!

Go to your friendship network to accept or refuse this request

Admin Profiles Page

Overview

Related Topics

• Tiki Profiles
• Bugs and Wishes
Tiki Reference Guide

Tiki profiles allow you to apply a pre-defined configuration to your Tiki

To access

Click the Profiles icon on the Admin Panel
or

Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:
- Apply Profiles
- Profiles Advanced

Note

In Tiki 1.9.x, profiles could be applied only during installation.

Typical Uses

- test suite: build a collection of samples representative of data in different quantity, using every features, for use with a testuite.

For more information

- http://profiles.tikiwiki.org
- old:
  - Using profiles with old system and Create a Profile which duplicate some info
  - TikiProfilesDev

Alias

- Profile
- Configuration Profile
- Configuration Profiles
Apply Profiles tab

Related Topics

• Installation
• Configuration
• Tiki Profiles
Overview
Use this tab to select an apply a profile from a repository to your Tiki

To Access
From the Profiles Admin page, click the Apply Profiles tab.

Note
Starting in Tiki3 the profile system is a powerful and versatile system that can be managed by the Tiki community. See http://profiles.tikiwiki.org. Profiles give the installer a choice of partially configured sites to install. They give a head start on the configuration process by picking a type of site that is similar in purpose.

No Tabs
6.x 3.x 2.x 1.9.x
Apply Profiles tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Fieldset or section

Field name | Description | Value

Starting in version 2.x (as a hidden feature) and specially after 3.x, you can point your browser to tiki-admin.php?page=profiles ("Admin home > Profiles"), allowing to set up at any time bunches of features in a certain way to produce specific use case of interest.

New Tiki 2.x and 3.x profile system

Flash player not available.

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://tiki.org), Page 109
Overview of Tiki 3: Installation and applying several profiles

Flash player not available.

Old profile system (< Tiki 2.x)
In Tiki 1.9, profiles were only active during the installation process. You could not go back and pick a different profile unless you re-installed the database, losing all your changes.


Requirements

Your php must have the option allow_url_fopen On or must have the library curl installed. Javascript must also be enabled on your browser.

Details of Supported Profiles

Tiki 3.x

See http://profiles.tikiwiki.org

Starting in version 2.x (as a hidden feature) and specially after 3.x, you can point your browser to tiki-admin.php?page=profiles ("Admin home > Profiles"), allowing to set up at any time bunches of features in a certain way to produce specific use case of interest.

New Tiki 2.x and 3.x profile system

Flash player not available.

Overview of Tiki 3: Installation and applying several profiles

Flash player not available.

Old profile system (< Tiki 2.x)
In Tiki 1.9, profiles were only active during the installation process. You could not go back and pick
a different profile unless you re-installed the database, losing all your changes.


Requirements

Your php must have the option allow_url_fopen On or must have the library curl installed. Javascript must also be enabled on your browser

Details of Supported Profiles

Tiki 3.x

See http://profiles.tikiwiki.org

"Profiles" up to Tiki 1.9.x was a feature used only when you install Tikiwiki. It set up the Tikiwiki according to an existing configuration that was "saved" from another site.

Until version 2.x, this feature is only active during the installation process. You could not go back and pick a different profile unless you re-installed the database, losing all your changes.

Profiles Advanced tab

Overview
Use this tab to specify a Tiki repository URL and data channel

To Access
From the Profiles Admin page, click the Advanced tab.
## Look & Feel

### Overview
Use this page to customize the design of your Tiki site, to apply themes, add custom coding.

### To access
Click the **Look & Feel** icon on the **Admin Panel**
or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repositories</td>
<td>Fully qualified URL of a repository</td>
<td><a href="http://profiles.tiki.org">http://profiles.tiki.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data channel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile Tester</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- Look and Feel Theme
- General Layout Options
- Shadow Layer
- Pagination Links
- UI Effects
- Custom CSS
- Miscellaneous

Note

In Tiki3 and earlier, this was called the Site Identity

Alias

- Site Identity
- Look and Feel Admin

Theme tab

Overview

Use this tab to select your Tiki theme and options, and other template configurations.

To Access

From the Look and Feel Admin page, click the Themes tab.

Note

You can obtain additional themes at http://themes.tiki.org

Related Topics

- Tiki Themes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Select the theme (from the available files in ../<em>styles/</em>.css)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme options</td>
<td>Some themes may have additional options, such as specific coloring or sizes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses can change theme</td>
<td>Allows users to change the theme (for example, via the Switch Theme module)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each group can have its own theme</td>
<td>Specifies if each Group has a unique theme (specified by the user's default Group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideshow theme</td>
<td>Select the theme for use when viewing wiki slideshows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit CSS</td>
<td>See Edit CSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme Control</td>
<td>See Theme Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiki Template Viewing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Templates</td>
<td>See Edit Template Docs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarty Template usage indicator</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will insert HTML comment tags to signify the start and end of content generated from specific TPL templates. <strong>Note</strong>: Do not enable this option for production sites.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Categories used in templates
Key Function and sub-features

Site Identity can be enabled by switching the checkbox on (off by default) at Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Features page. In Tiki 2.2, the Site Identity checkbox is on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the Theme tab. The main sub-feature is the Site Logo which will appear on the top Site Header of every Tikiwiki page and by default it links to the index page ("./") of the used site as is common.

Site Identity Settings can be found on Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity (it used to be on the General settings page). In Tiki 2.2 these settings can be found on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the General Layout tab.

Currently you can:

- enable Site Location bar (aka breadcrumbs)
- customize the Site Logo image source, background color, title and alt attributes
- put your own Custom Code in the Site Header
- setup banner zones and enable the Banner area
- enable Site Search bar

This is the admin interface at "Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity" (similar to the corresponding interface at "Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel -> General Layout" in Tiki 2.2)

Webmaster Report: tikiwiki >= 2.0. This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Report Webmaster' that will open

Requirement: You need the permission tiki_p_site_report to see the link

Send a link: tikiwiki >= 2.0. This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Send a Link' that will open

Requirement: You need the feature 'tell a friend' activated and the permission tiki_p_tell_a_friend.

Note:
In case you can publish more than 250 characters under "Custom code > content", and you can't see the option to enable more than 250 characters in the tiki interface as in the above screenshot, you can manually do so in the database itself.
You can go to your database using PhpMyAdmin? (database tiki19_drecerca in this example above, select tiki_preferences table, and edit the "value" field of the table (see the hand icon on the screenshot, on the edit button) from "varchar(250)" to "text", so that it ends like in the previous screenshot.

Examples

Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.

Here is one of several different ways. This one in particular puts your banner logo image in the top left corner and then repeats another image from the right side of that image all the way across to the right side of the page (in effect, continuing the vertical pattern on the right side of your logo horizontally all the way across the page).

To do this, first upload into your gallery your banner logo image (image id=3 below) and a 1px wide image of the right side of your logo (image id=14 below). Then go to: Admin, Admin Home, Look & Feel, General Layout (/tiki-admin.php?page=look#layout), Custom Site Header. Check Activate and Publish checkboxes. In the Content text box, enter something like:

```html
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=14') repeat-x"><img src="/tw2/show_image.php?id=3" /></div>
```

Credit be to luciash!

And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo

```html
{if $page ne ''}
<div style="float:right;"
  {if $page eq 'HomePage'}
    <img src="http://domain.com/show_image.php?id=22" />
  {elseif $page eq 'Other Page'}
    <img src="http://domain.com/show_image.php?id=23" />
  {/if}
{/if}
</div>
{if}
</div>
{/if}
```

```html
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=31') repeat-x">
<a href="http://domain.com"> <img src="/tw2/show_image.php?id=30" border="0" /></a>
</div>
```
General Layout Options tab

Overview

Use this tab to select your Tiki theme and options, and other template configurations.

To Access

From the Look and Feel Admin page, click the General Layout Options tab.

Note

Many of these options were introduced in Tiki 1.9.2, as the Site Identity feature.

No Tabs

Tiki 6 Tiki 2

Related Topics

• Tiki Themes
Theme tab (courtesy of Tiki for Smarties)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Custom HTML head Content</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed width</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary site menu custom code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Site Header</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Logo and Title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logo source</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Logo background color</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Logo background style</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Logo alignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Logo title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Alt description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Site title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Subtitle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login Bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top Bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Site menu bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Search Bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Custom code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Center Column Header</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left column</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right column</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breadcrumbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Site Footer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom End of body Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bottom bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Bottom bar icons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Bottom bar debug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Bottom bar (RSS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Add a Powered by...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Display current Tiki version</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Status bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Webmaster Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Webmaster email</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Email this page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key Function and sub-features**

Site Identity can be enabled by switching the checkbox on (off by default) at Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Features page. In Tiki 2.2, the Site Identity checkbox is on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the Theme tab. The main sub-feature is the Site Logo which will appear on the top Site Header of every Tikiwiki page and by default it links to the index page ("./") of the used site as is common.
Site Identity Settings can be found on Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity (it used to be on the General settings page). In Tiki 2.2 these settings can be found on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the General Layout tab.

Currently you can:

• enable Site Location bar (aka breadcrumbs)
• customize the Site Logo image source, background color, title and alt attributes
• put your own Custom Code in the Site Header
• setup banner zones and enable the Banner area
• enable Site Search bar

This is the admin interface at "Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity" (similar to the corresponding interface at "Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel -> General Layout" in Tiki 2.2)

Webmaster Report: tikiwiki >= 2.0. This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Report Webmaster' that will open

Requirement: You need the permission tiki_p_site_report to see the link

Send a link: tikiwiki >= 2.0. This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Send a Link' that will open

Requirement: You need the feature 'tell a friend' activated and the permission tiki_p_tell_a_friend.

Note:
In case you can publish more than 250 characters under "Custom code > content", and you can't see the option to enable more than 250 characters in the tiki interface as in the above screenshot, you can manually do so in the database itself.

You can go to your database using PhpMyAdmin? (database tiki19_drecerca in this example above, select tiki_preferences table, and edit the "value" field of the table (see the hand icon on
the screenshot, on the edit button) from "varchar(250)" to "text", so that it ends like in the previous screenshot.

Examples

Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.

Here is one of several different ways. This one in particular puts your banner logo image in the top left corner and then repeats another image from the right side of that image all the way across to the right side of the page (in effect, continuing the vertical pattern on the right side of your logo horizontally all the way across the page).

To do this, first upload into your gallery your banner logo (image id=3 below) and a 1px wide image of the right side of your logo (image id=14 below). Then go to: Admin, Admin Home, Look & Feel, General Layout (.tiki-admin.php?page=look#layout), Custom Site Header. Check Activate and Publish checkboxes. In the Content text box, enter something like:

```
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=14') repeat-x"><img src="/tw2/show_image.php?id=3" /></div>
```

Credit be to luciash!

And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo

```
{if $page ne ''}
  <div style="float:right;">
    {if $page eq 'HomePage'}
      <img src="http://domain.com/show_image.php?id=22" />
    {elseif $page eq 'Other Page'}
      <img src="http://domain.com/show_image.php?id=23" />
    {/if}
  </div>
{if}
{/if}
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=31') repeat-x">
  <a href="http://domain.com"><img src="/tw2/show_image.php?id=30" border="0"></a>
</div>
```
Shadow Layer tab

Overview
Use this tab to select your Tiki theme and options, and other template configurations.

To Access
From the Look and Feel Admin page, click the General Layout Options tab.

Note
Many of these options were introduced in Tiki 1.9.2, as the Site Identity feature.

No Tabs
Tiki 6

Related Topics
- Tiki Themes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shadow layer</td>
<td>Additional layers for shadows, rounded corners or other decorative styling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pagination Links tab

Overview

Related Topics

- Tiki Themes
Use this tab to specify how Tiki displays pagination in lists.

To Access
From the [Look and Feel Admin](http://tiki.org) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No Tabs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiki 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pagination Links tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of users to show in drop down lists:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of records in listings:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use relative (next / previous) pagination links</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use direct pagination links</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. number of links around the current item:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. number of links after the first or before the last item:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display 'First' and 'Last' links</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display fast move links (by 10 percent of the total number of pages)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide pagination when there is only one page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Icons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UI Effects tab

**Overview**

- Related Topics
  - [Tiki Themes](http://tiki.org)
Use this tab to select the standard configuration of specific UI (including JS and JQ) effects.

**To Access**

From the [Look and Feel Admin](http://tiki.org) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

### No Tabs 6.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Standard UI effects**

Effect for modules:

- Speed:
- Direction:

**Tab UI effects**

Effect for tabs:

- Speed:
- Direction:
### Custom CSS tab

**Overview**

Use this tab to add custom CSS styles to your site.

**To Access**

From the [Look and Feel Admin](http://tiki.org) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Shadowbox / ColorBox</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>JS Calendar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**No Tabs**

6.x

---

Custom CSS
## Custom CSS

### Miscellaneous tab

**Overview**  
Use this tab to add custom CSS styles to your site.

**To Access**  
From the Look and Feel Admin page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

- **Related Topics**
  - [Tiki Themes](http://tiki.org)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Tabs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layout per section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correct PNG images alpha transparency in IE6 (experimental)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSS selectors to be fixed:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate multiple elements with a comma (,)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTMLDomElements to be fixed:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate multiple elements with a comma (,)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Favicon**

Favicon icon file name:

Favicon icon MIME type:

Context Menus (Currently used in File Galleries only.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use context menus for actions (icons)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use context menus for actions (text)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Separators**

Locations (breadcrumbs):

Examples: » / > : -> →

Choices:

Examples: | / | : :

**Custom Code**

Custom JavaScript

---

**Internationalization (i18n)**

*Internationalization* in computer science means the process of making a computer program ready to support many languages (have the interface translated in to different languages which the user can select according to his/her preferences, showing content or menus for some languages but not others, etc.).

*Tip:*

It is often also known as "i18n" (since the word *internationalization* is quite long, but is the most common word starting with an *I*, followed by 18 more characters, and ending with an *n*: *i*+18+*n* = "i18n").

A similar approach was followed with the word *localization* (the process of making a new translation for a local language in an internationalized software) as "l10n" (= *l*+10+*n").
Overview

Tiki was designed to be multilingual since the beginning and is nowadays translated to over 35 languages. The standard out-of-the-box Tiki installation is designed to work in a multilingual environment. If ever you encounter any problems, please consult with your ISP or server administrator to make sure your database is configured to supports UTF-8 character encoding (which almost certainly the case).

The list and the status of the strings translations for the Tiki interface are updated on: http://tiki.org/i18n. The strings are the messages and the menu labels.

As an administrator, you can build a monolingual site other than an English one or a multilingual site.
As a user, you can view a multilingual site in you favorite language, and have pages translated into other languages. Starting in Tiki2, it is MUCH easier for your community to keep wiki pages updated and synchronized among all translations. Please see: http://wiki-translation.com/Cross+Lingual+Wiki+Engine+Project

More documentation

- Interface translation 2
- i18n Admin
- Multilingual Article
- Multilingual categories
- Multilingual Module
- Multilingual Menu
- Multilingual Structures
- Multilingual tags
- Multilingual Trackers
- Multilingual Wiki
- Machine Translation
- Interface translation
  - Interactive Translation
- Best language
- UTF-8
- Character Encoding
- PluginLang
- PluginTr
- PluginTranslated
- Module switch_lang
- Module switch_lang2
- Module translation
- http://profiles.tiki.org/Collaborative_Multilingual_Terminology
- http://profiles.tiki.org/Multilingual_Wiki
Alias

- Internationalization
- 显示中文

---

Table of contents:

---

**Babelfish Links**

**Overview**

Use this tab to enable Babelfish links at the bottom of the Tiki site (for machine translation).

Related Topics

- Machine Translation
- Multilingual Wiki

**To Access**

From the i18n Admin page, click the Babelfish tab.

**Note**

Babelfish machine translation is provided by Yahoo!

---

**No Tabs**

**6.x**

Babelfish Links tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Translation URLs</td>
<td>Display text links to translate the page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation Icons</td>
<td>Display flag icons to translate the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Customized String Translation tab

**Overview**
Use this tab to add custom translations to the language database.

**To Access**
From the [General Admin](http://tiki.org) page, click the [General Preferences](http://tiki.org) tab.

**Note**
_if applicable_

**Related Topics**
- [i18n](http://tiki.org)

---

**Setting** | **Description** | **Default**
--- | --- | ---
page | | |
Table of contents:

- Editing and Plugins General Settings
- Plugins
- Plugin Aliases

Table of contents:

Table of contents:

Table of contents:

**Modules**

In Tiki, a `module` is simply a box of content. Use the [Modules Admin](http://tiki.org) page to add modules to the left or right column of a Tiki site.

![Default Tiki page with the Menu module in the left column.](http://tiki.org)

Some common uses for modules are to:
• Display menus
• Add special features
• Display custom information to users

After adding modules, you can re-order them, assign permissions to them (so they appear only for specific user groups), or even allow them to be customized by specific users.

In addition to appearing in the the left or right column, you can also include a module in any wiki text area by using the Module plugin.

Note: Even though they are called modules, nearly all are included with the default Tiki installation. There are no additional "add-ons" to be installed in order to use these modules.

Modules vs. Plugins

The distinction between modules and plugins is a little blurry. Technically speaking, modules are the containers and plugins are the content. However, the predefined modules included with the default Tiki installation contain plugins/content, but they are commonly called modules, too.

Related pages

Module admin - explains how to create, choose and place modules on the site.
User modules - explains how (if the feature is active) users can choose and place their modules.
Module Parameters - description of module parameters that are available to all modules.

Tiki Modules

This section organized the modules by content category. Below that is a table of contents of the documentation for each module. You can also create custom modules, called User Modules.

No Tabs
FeatureUser's ConfigNavigationRecent ChangesBest OfHelpSearchMyTikiMiscellaneous

Feature Modules
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>articles</td>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>Lists recently-visited pages.</td>
<td>title, type, topicId, topic, start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breadcrumb</td>
<td>Recently visited pages</td>
<td></td>
<td>maxlen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calendar</td>
<td>Calendar-Filter</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.x, 4.x, 5.x, 6.x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>categories</td>
<td>Displays category objects.</td>
<td>type, deep, categId, style</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change_category</td>
<td></td>
<td>id, shy (show only if page is in categ)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comm_received_objects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directory_stats</td>
<td>Directory stats</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>featured_links</td>
<td>Featured links</td>
<td>Displays featured links.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minichat</td>
<td>Mini chat</td>
<td>Shows a small box for chat updated at real time without browser refresh.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>random_pages</td>
<td>Displays a link to a random wiki page.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>random_images</td>
<td>Displays a random image thumbnail.</td>
<td>galleryId</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoutbox</td>
<td>post comments in to the module for all to see</td>
<td>tooltip</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who_is_there</td>
<td>Online users</td>
<td>Lists usernames of logged-in users.</td>
<td>cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logged_users</td>
<td>Online users</td>
<td>Shows the number of logged-in users.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 138
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>login_box</td>
<td>The login/logout box</td>
<td></td>
<td>input_size (since 1.10)=size in characters of the text input box</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>online_users</td>
<td>Online users</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists real names of logged-in users.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### User's Configuration Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch_lang</td>
<td>Switch site language (dropdown list title, nobox, flip, selector).</td>
<td></td>
<td>title, nobox, flip, decorations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch_lang2</td>
<td>Switch site language (select among text links).</td>
<td></td>
<td>title, nobox, flip, decorations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch_theme</td>
<td>Allows users to switch site theme</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Navigation Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>directory_last_sites</td>
<td>Lists latest sites links added to Directory.</td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums, absurl ([y</td>
<td>n] - If not set, default = relative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directory_stats</td>
<td>Shows Directory statistics.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directory_top_sites</td>
<td>Shows most-visited sites in Directory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Module Reference Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>what's related</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists objects in same category as current page/object.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Recent Changes Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>forums_last_posts</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists recent forum posts.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forums_last_topics</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists recent new forum topics. Or in version 1.10, also recently replied to</td>
<td>nonums, absurl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since_last_visit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Shows changes in various features since last login</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since_last_visit_new</td>
<td></td>
<td>Shows changes in various features since last login</td>
<td>showuser, showtracker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wiki_last_comments</td>
<td></td>
<td>Most recently added wiki comments</td>
<td>moretoolips, nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_actions</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays latest users' actions.</td>
<td>showuser, showdate, nonums, maxlen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_articles</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays latest articles.</td>
<td>type, topicId, topic, nonums, absurl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_blog_posts</td>
<td>display latest blog posts</td>
<td></td>
<td>blogid, title, nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_category_objects</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recently categorized objects</td>
<td>type, id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module Name</td>
<td>Module Title</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td>Versions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_created_blogs</td>
<td>Recently created</td>
<td>blogs</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_created_faqs</td>
<td>Recently created</td>
<td>FAQs</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_created_quizzes</td>
<td>Recently created</td>
<td>Quiz</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directory_last_sites</td>
<td>Last Sites</td>
<td>Recently added links in</td>
<td>galleryId,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Directory.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_files</td>
<td>Displays files</td>
<td>uploaded since last visit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>galleryId,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_file_galleries</td>
<td>Displays file</td>
<td>galleries modified since</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>last visit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_image_galleries</td>
<td>Displays latest</td>
<td>Image Gallery modified since</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>last visit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_images</td>
<td>Lists most-recent</td>
<td>image uploads.</td>
<td>galleryId,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_images_th</td>
<td>Shows thumbnails of</td>
<td>most-recent image uploads.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>galleryId</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_modified_blogs</td>
<td>Display blogs</td>
<td>modified since last visit.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_modif_pages</td>
<td>Displays most</td>
<td>recently edited wiki pages</td>
<td>minor, maxlen,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums, absurl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_modif_tracker</td>
<td>Lists the tracker</td>
<td>items added since last</td>
<td>name, trackerId,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_submissions</td>
<td>Lists the tracker</td>
<td>items added since last</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>visit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Tiki Reference Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>last_tracker_comments</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists the last tracker comments</td>
<td>trackerId, itemId, nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_tracker_items</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists the last tracker items added.</td>
<td>status, name, trackerId, nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_visitors</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists recent logged-in visitors.</td>
<td>maxlen, nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### "Best of" Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>forums_best_voted_topics</td>
<td>Top topics</td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forums_most_commented_forums</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forums_most_read_topics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forums_most_visited_forums</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_active_blogs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_articles</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Articles by number of hits</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_files</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists files by number of hits (downloads?)</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_file_galleries</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists file galleries by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_forum_posters</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists most-active forum posters.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module Name</td>
<td>Module Title</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td>Versions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_games</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Games by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_images</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Images by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_images_th</td>
<td></td>
<td>Shows thumbnails of most-viewed images.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_image_galleries</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Image Gallery pages by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_objects</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists most-viewed objects (pages, galleries, etc.).</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_pages</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Wiki pages by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_quizzes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Quiz by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_visited_blogs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists Blog by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top_visited_faqs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists FAQs by number of hits.</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Help and Support Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assistant</td>
<td>Tiki Assistant</td>
<td>Welcome message to admin of new Tiki installation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live_support</td>
<td></td>
<td>Starts the live support feature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Search Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>google</td>
<td>Google Search</td>
<td>Web search</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search_box</td>
<td></td>
<td>Search in entire site or by feature.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search_new</td>
<td></td>
<td>Search in entire site or by feature.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search_wiki_page</td>
<td></td>
<td>Search for wiki page name.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MyTiki Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>user_blogs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists &quot;my Blogs&quot; from the MyTiki feature</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_bookmarks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists &quot;my Bookmarks&quot; from the MyTiki feature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_image_galleries</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists &quot;my Pages&quot; from the MyTiki feature</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_pages</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists &quot;my Pages&quot; from the MyTiki feature</td>
<td>nonums</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_tasks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lists tasks from the MyTiki feature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messages_unread_messages</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the number of new user messages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Miscellaneous Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Versions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>events</td>
<td>Current events</td>
<td>Displays calendar (?)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menupage</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays a wiki page's content.</td>
<td>name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num_submissions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old_articles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick_edit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic navigation menu created on the fly from a given structure toc</td>
<td>title, templateld, submit, size, mod_quickedit_heading, categId</td>
<td>2.x, some params only in 3.0 like &quot;maxdepth&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wikistructure</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic navigation menu created on the fly from a given structure toc</td>
<td>id, maxdepth (in theory, same as toc)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tail</td>
<td></td>
<td>(used by devs)</td>
<td>file, title, max, reverse, filter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upcoming_events</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>calendarId, maxDays, maxlen, nonums, date_format</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_similarcontent</td>
<td>Similar Content</td>
<td>Display similar content to current object using FreeTags</td>
<td>contentType 5.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poll</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays a poll in a wiki page</td>
<td>polllId</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. As listed on Admin Modules page.
2. As displayed to visitors, English.
More information,

Please see the following pages:

alias

- ModulesDoc
- Modules

Meta Tags Configuration page

Related Topics

- Search engine optimization
- Bugs and Wishes
Use this page to include <meta> tags within the <head></head> elements of your Tiki pages.

To access

Click the **Meta Tags** icon on the Admin Panel
or

**Note**
Many search engines use this information to index your site and to format information on results pages.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meta tags</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keywords</td>
<td>A list of key words (separated by commas) that describe your site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include Freetags</td>
<td>If the freetags feature is enabled, use the freetags in the meta keywords for each page with freetags set. This, combined with freetags, allows individual pages on the site to carry different meta tags.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Thread Title</td>
<td>Use the forum thread title in the meta title tag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Image Title</td>
<td>Use the image title in the meta title tag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of your site. Some search engines display this information with your site's listing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use individual page description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>The author of your site. Typically this will be the Admin or Webmaster.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Geo URL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geo.position</td>
<td>The latitude and longitude of the physical location of your Tiki. For example, the geo.position for <a href="http://www.whitehouse.gov">http://www.whitehouse.gov</a> in Washington, DC, USA is: 38.898748, -77.037684</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geo.region</td>
<td>The ISO-3166-1 Country and ISO-3166-2 Region code for your location.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geo.placename</td>
<td>A free-text description of your location.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Robots</strong></td>
<td>Specify how web-bots should index your site. Valid values include: INDEX or NOINDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Meta Tags Config

Use tags to include metadata about your Tiki. This information is placed within the tags of your pages. Many search engines use this information to index your site and to format information on results pages.

Click the **Meta Tags** icon on the **Admin Panel** to display the Meta Tags Administration screen. Use the Meta Tags Administration panel to define the tags included in the header information of each Tiki page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meta Keywords</td>
<td>A list of key words (separated by commas) that describe your site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert freetags in keyword list</td>
<td>If the freetags feature is enabled, use the freetags in the meta keywords for each page with freetags set. This, combined with freetags, allows individual pages on the site to carry different meta tags.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the thread title in Forum pages instead</td>
<td>Use the forum thread title in the meta title tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the image title in Image gallery pages instead</td>
<td>Use the image title in the meta title tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meta Description</td>
<td>A short description of your site. Some search engines display this information with your site's listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meta Author</td>
<td>The author of your site. Typically this will be the Admin or Webmaster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geo.position</td>
<td>The latitude and longitude of the physical location of your Tiki. For example, the geo.position for <a href="http://www.whitehouse.gov">http://www.whitehouse.gov</a> in Washington, DC, USA is: 38.898748, -77.037684</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**geo.region**

The ISO-3166-1 Country and ISO-3166-2 Region code for your location.

**geo.placename**

A free-text description of your location.

**Meta Robots**

Specify how web-bots should index your site. Valid values include:

- INDEX or NOINDEX
- FOLLOW or NOFOLLOW

**Revist after**

Specify how often (in days) web-bots should visit your site.

To add additional tags, you must manually update the `header.tpl` template file.

**Troubleshooting**

If you find that these preferences are not taking effect and not persisting - when you click "change settings" nothing happens and the flag is cleared on the next screen, you may find that the rows are missing from tiki preferences.

Ensure the following rows exist:

```sql
INSERT INTO `tiki_preferences` (`name`, `value`) VALUES ('metatag_freetags', 'y');
INSERT INTO `tiki_preferences` (`name`, `value`) VALUES ('metatag_threadtitle', 'y');
INSERT INTO `tiki_preferences` (`name`, `value`) VALUES ('metatag_imagetitle', 'y');
```

For more information

- [http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/global.html#h-7.4.4](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/global.html#h-7.4.4)

**Alias**

- [MetaTag](http://tiki.org)
Performance Admin page

Overview

Related Topics

- Performance
- Bugs and Wishes
Use this page to fine-tune your Tiki to improve overall performance.

To access
Click the **Performance** icon on the **Admin Panel** or

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:
- Performance
- Bytecode Cache
- Wiki tab
- Performance Database
- Performance Memcache
- Performance Plugins
- Major Slowdown tab
- Sessions tab

---

**Performance Tab**

**Overview**

**Related Topics**

- **Performance**
Use this tab to configure Tiki's general performance features.

**To Access**
From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Performance** tab.

### No Tabs

**6.x**

---

**Setting** | **Description** | **Default**
--- | --- | ---

Minify JavaScript

Use CDN for javascript:

Content Delivery Network:
Prefix to include before the static files, for example: [http://cdn.example.com](http://cdn.example.com)

Content Delivery Network (in SSL):
Prefix to include before the static files, for example: [https://cdn.example.com](https://cdn.example.com)

Minify CSS

Minify CSS into a single file

GZip output
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serve avatar images statically</td>
<td>Example: no-cache, pre-check=0, post-check=0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache-Control header:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarty Compilation:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bottom bar debug</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Bytecode Cache Tab**

**Overview**

**Related Topics**

- **Performance**
Use this tab to configure bytecoding caching.

To Access
From the Performance Admin Panel page, click the Performance tab.

Note
Using a bytecode cache (APC, XCache) is highly recommended for production environments.

---

Wiki tab

Overview
Use this tab to configure performance settings for the wiki feature

To Access
From the Performance Admin Panel page, click the Performance tab.

No Tabs
6.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cache wiki pages (global)</td>
<td>Select the amount of time for which to cache all wiki pages</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cached pages will display <strong>cached</strong> in the page title.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics
- Performance
- Wiki
- Cache

Tiki Reference Guide

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 155
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Individual wiki cache</td>
<td>If enabled, users can specify a page-specific cache time for each wiki page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page ranking reload probability</td>
<td></td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Database tab

**Overview**

Use this tab to configure performance settings for the Tiki database.

**Related Topics**
- Performance
- Cache

**To Access**

From the Performance Admin Panel page, click the Database tab.

**No Tabs**

6.x

---

Database tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Log SQL</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will log each SQL call to the database.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Enabling this option may affect overall performance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Memcache tab

Overview
Use this tab to configure performance settings when using PHP memcache

To Access
From the Performance Admin Panel page, click the Database tab.

Note

No Tabs
6.x
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memcache</td>
<td>Note: Requires the PHP memcache extension.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memcache compression</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memcache key prefix:</td>
<td></td>
<td>tiki_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memcache expiration:</td>
<td></td>
<td>3600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memcache servers:</td>
<td>Add one server per line, in the format: address:port (weight)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache wiki data in memcache</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache wiki output in memcache</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache forum output in memcache</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plugins tab

**Overview**

Use this tab to configure caching for specific plugins

**To Access**

From the Performance Admin Panel page, click the Plugins tab.

**Note**

In Tiki 6.x, this tab controls the Plugin Snarf plugin.

### No Tabs

6.x

### Database tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global cache time for the plugin snarf in seconds:</td>
<td>Number of seconds for which to cache the Snarf output</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Major Slowdown tab

**Overview**
Use this tab to configure the Tiki options that may affect your overall performance.

**To Access**
From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Major Slow Down** tab.

**Note**
The features on this tab have been reported to lower overall performance, especially in high-volume sites.

### No Tabs

#### 6.x

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHPLayers</td>
<td>Enable the <a href="#">PHPLayer</a> menu system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: PHPLayers was deprecated in Tiki5 — use CSS Menus instead.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plugin Sharethis Enable the [Share This plugin](#).
Sessions tab

Overview
Use this tab to configure the Tiki options that may affect your overall performance.

Related Topics
- Sessions?
- Performance

To Access
From the Performance Admin Panel page, click the Major Slow Down tab.

Note
Changing settings on this tab will automatically log you out of your Tiki (after saving the preference).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Session storage location</td>
<td>Select where Tiki stores the session information: as specified in the php.ini file, the database, or memcache</td>
<td>php.ini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session lifetime</td>
<td>Number of minutes to maintain the session</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 161
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Session cookie name:</td>
<td>Default cookie name for the session. This will override the default PHP configuration.</td>
<td>PHPSESSID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silent session</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki <em>will not</em> automatically start sessions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache-Control header (no session):</td>
<td>Custom HTTP header to use when no session is active (for example, Silent Session)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Security Administration
Overview
Configure the basic site security and anti-spam options

To Access
From the Admin Home page, click Security.

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:
- Tiki Reference Guide
- General Administration
- General Preferences tab
- General Settings tab
- Navigation tab
- Date and Time tab
  • Date and Time Formats
- Change Admin Password tab
- Features Admin
- Global Features
- Interface
- Programmer
- New
- Experimental
  • Related
- Alias
- Login Administration page
- General Preferences
  • Case Sensitivity
  • Remember Me
    • Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity
  • CustomFields
- LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4
  • Changes
  • How it works
    • Group membership and permissions
    • How anonymous binding works
  • Settings
    • How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use
    • How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki
- Examples
  • Unix
  • Active Directory

Related Topics
- Plugin Security
- http://security.tikiwiki.org/
- security admin
• Zimbra LDAP
• Debugging
• Common Problems and Workarounds
• Certificate Problems
• LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X
  • LDAP §a4d9a8a5b266536ef45aee318486af674§ General Settings Overview
  • LDAP §6013814ea94deff52f678ac3c4682a78§ Troubleshooting
• LDAP Authentication tab
• Aliases
  • AuthPAM
    • Admin Documentation
    • Requirements for AuthPAM
    • Permissions!
    • Security Issues
• PAM Authentication tab
  • Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
• Intro
  • Mod phpcas
• Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
  • Install
• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration
    • phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options
• Community Administration
• User Features tab
• Community General Settings Tab
  • General Description
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Typical Uses
• Friendship Network tab
• Admin Profiles Page
  • For more information
• Alias
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
• Apply Profiles tab
• Profiles Advanced tab
• Look & Feel
• Alias
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
      • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
• Theme tab
• Key Function and sub-features
• Examples
  • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
  • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
• General Layout Options tab
• Shadow Layer tab
• Pagination Links tab
• UI Effects tab
• Custom CSS tab
• Miscellaneous tab
• Internationalization (i18n)
  • Overview
• Babelfish Links
• Customized String Translation tab
  • Feature Modules
  • User's Configuration Modules
  • Navigation Modules
  • Recent Changes Modules
  • "Best of" Modules
  • Help and Support Modules
  • Search Modules
  • MyTiki Modules
  • Miscellaneous Modules
• Modules
  • Modules vs. Plugins
  • Related pages
• Tiki Modules
  • More information.
• Meta Tags Config
• Meta Tags Configuration page
• Performance Admin page
• Performance Tab
• Bytecode Cache Tab
• Wiki tab
• Database tab
• Memcache tab
• Plugins tab
• Major Slowdown tab
• Sessions tab
  • General Security
  • Spam Protection
  • Search Results
  • Site Access
  • Tokens
General Security

Use this tab to configure site security preferences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smarty Security</td>
<td>If enabled, PHP coding <strong>will not</strong> be allowed in Smarty TPL templates.</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTML Purifier</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will attempt to &quot;sanitize&quot; all generated pages and produce standards-compliant pages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Output Should be HTML
### Field | Description | Default
---|---|---
Purified

**Allow HTML in link text...** If enabled, you can include HTML coding in menu links

**Require confirmation if CSRF detected**

**Protect against CSRF with a ticket**

---

### Spam Protection

Use this tab to enable anti-spam CAPTCHAs and protect email address links.

See [Spam Protection](http://tiki.org).

### Search Results
Site Access

Tokens

Clipperz Online Password Management

Table of contents:

Spam Protection tab

Overview
Use this tab to enable anti-spam CAPTCHAs and protect email address links.

To Access
From the Security Admin page, click the Spam Protection tab.

Note
When enabled, the following Tiki features are protected:

- wiki page edits (starting in 1.9)
- wiki page comments (starting in 1.9)
- forum posts and replies (starting in 1.9)

Related Topics
- Security
- Banning
- Comment moderation
• tracker item comments (starting in 2.0)
• freetags (starting in 2.0)
• calendar items (starting in 3.4, 4.2, and 5.0)
• newsletter subscriptions (starting in 3.4, 4.2, and 5.0)

Spam protection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAPTCHA</td>
<td>Anonymous editors must input anti-bot code</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word length...</td>
<td>Number of characters in the CAPTCHA image</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width...</td>
<td>Width, in pixels, of the CAPTCHA image</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of noise</td>
<td>Specifies how difficult the CAPTCHA is to read. Higher number is more secure, but more difficult to read.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use ReCaptcha</td>
<td>Instead of using the default Zend_Captcha implementation, Tiki can use CAPTCHAs from ReCaptcha</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protect email...</td>
<td>Tiki will obfuscate email addresses, making it harder for spambots to steal email address that are displayed in pages,</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forums, blogs, and so on.</td>
<td></td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add &quot;rel=nofollow&quot;...</td>
<td>Adds nofollow parameter to all external links prevent robots and spiders from collecting external pages. See <a href="http://dev.tiki.org/wish1583">http://dev.tiki.org/wish1583</a> for more information.</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banning System</td>
<td>Enables the Banning feature. Allows you to ban visitors by username and IP address</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/ in 4+: it was moved to tiki-admin.php?page=general, "General Preferences" section.

/ in 3.0, it as moved to: in tiki-admin.php?page=textarea

/ in 1.9.x: in tiki-admin.php?page=wiki

**Prevent automatic/robot registration**

in 1.9.x
In tiki-admin.php?page=login, you can activate "Prevent automatic/robot registration:". This will add Captcha code on the registration (tiki-register.php) page.
• General Settings tab
• Navigation tab
• Date and Time tab
  • Date and Time Formats
• Change Admin Password tab
• Features Admin
• Global Features
• Interface
• Programmer
• New
• Experimental
  • Related
• Alias
• Login Administration page
• General Preferences
  • Case Sensitivity
  • Remember Me
    • Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity
  • CustomFields
• LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4
  • Changes
  • How it works
    • Group membership and permissions
    • How anonymous binding works
  • Settings
    • How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use
    • How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki
• Examples
  • Unix
  • Active Directory
  • Zimbra LDAP
• Debugging
  • Common Problems and Workarounds
    • Certificate Problems
• LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X
  • LDAP §4d9a8a5b266536ef45aee318486af674§ General Settings Overview
  • LDAP §6013814ea94deff52f678ac3c4682a78§ Troubleshooting
• LDAP Authentication tab
• Aliases
  • AuthPAM
• Admin Documentation
• Requirements for AuthPAM
• Permissions!
• Security Issues

• PAM Authentication tab
  • Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
  • Intro
  • Mod phpcas
  • Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
  • Install

• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration
    • phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options

• Community Administration

• User Features tab

• Community General Settings Tab
  • General Description
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Typical Uses

• Friendship Network tab

• Admin Profiles Page
  • For more information

• Alias
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x

• Apply Profiles tab

• Profiles Advanced tab

• Look & Feel

• Alias
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
- And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
- **Theme tab**
  - Key Function and sub-features
  - Examples
    - Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
    - And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
- **General Layout Options tab**
- **Shadow Layer tab**
- **Pagination Links tab**
- **UI Effects tab**
- **Custom CSS tab**
- **Miscellaneous tab**
- **Internationalization (i18n)**
  - Overview
- **Babelfish Links**
- **Customized String Translation tab**
  - Feature Modules
  - User's Configuration Modules
  - Navigation Modules
  - Recent Changes Modules
  - "Best of" Modules
  - Help and Support Modules
  - Search Modules
  - MyTiki Modules
  - Miscellaneous Modules
- **Modules**
  - Modules vs. Plugins
  - Related pages
- **Tiki Modules**
  - More information,
- **Meta Tags Config**
- **Meta Tags Configuration page**
- **Performance Admin page**
- **Performance Tab**
- **Bytecode Cache Tab**
- **Wiki tab**
- **Database tab**
- **Memcache tab**
- **Plugins tab**
- **Major Slowdown tab**
- **Sessions tab**
  - General Security
  - Spam Protection
  - Search Results
  - Site Access
Clipperz online password manager

While Tiki has tons of features to manage all sorts of data, one that Tiki doesn't do is online password management. You could of course save passwords in wiki pages which are permission protected, but they are not encrypted there. So anyone with access to your MySQL database can read the content of the pages.

You can either use the free service at clipperz.com or run the Open Source Clipperz Community Edition.

Clipperz is part of the Tiki Suite and some basic integration between Tiki and Clipperz is planned.

alias

- Password manager
- Password management
- Password
- Clipperz
Comments Admin page

Overview

Related Topics

- Inline comments
- Bugs and Wishes
Use this page to configure the global (site-wide) comment options.

To access

Click the **Comments** icon on the **Admin Panel**
or

**Note**

Comments need to be activated on a feature-by-feature basis. Comments can be used in:

- **Articles**
- **Wiki** pages
- **Blog** including individual blog posts
- **Image gallery**
- **File gallery**
- **Polls**
- **FAQs**
- **Tracker items**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site-wide Features</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments Moderation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments Locking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow posting of comments as Anonymous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use vote system for comments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display Options</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable title for comments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email field Reset to default</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Website field Reset to default</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default number of rows for comment box:</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Permissions

#### Inline Comments

#### Using comments in various features

- Comments for articles
- Comments below wiki pages
- Display by default
- Default number per page:
- Default Ordering:
- Allow comments per wiki page:
- Enable watches on comments
- Comments on blog posts
- File Gallery Comments
- Default number per page:
- Default ordering:
- Comments for polls
- Comments for FAQs
- Plugin Tracker Comments
Comments

Comments are threaded replies to a content item.

New in Tiki6: inline comments

If you enable comments for some of the features of Tiki from the admin menu you will see links to show/hide comments and the number of comments for the object being viewed. In this section we'll explain comments for Tiki pages, everything will be the same for other Tiki features such as articles, blogs, polls, etc.

If you see this bar at the bottom of the central part of the screen (or somewhere else if the customization changed the appearance) then you can see/enter comments. Click the Show comments link to display comments and a form to post new comments (if you have the permission).

for beginners

There are more then one place to switch on Comments for the Comments to work. For Comments to work at least three different steps are needed.
- I think first to take care of are the permissions for the Groups.
- Later each and every single Feature needs to be reviewed in detail to make sure Comments are ON for the intended Feature.
- Finally, when items are created under each Feature the Comments option needs to be checked ON for the particular created item.

There maybe more steps for some Features. I did not use all of the Features. With a little patience they will all work and we learn how to appreciate the fine tuning abilities in this software package.

More documentation
Feeds Admin page

Overview
Use this page to configure the feeds generated by Tiki. By default, Tiki adds an RSS link for each feed in the footer:

Tiki-generated feeds

To access
Click the Feeds icon on the Admin Panel or Access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=rss

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:
- Feeds General Preferences
- Feeds Feeds

Note
To syndicate feeds from other sites, use the Admin > External Feeds menu option.
Feeds

Overview

A web feed is a summary of a Website's news, files, and other activities that it distributes or syndicates to other Websites and individual users. RSS is an acronym for "Rich Site Summary" (sometimes also used as Really Simple Syndication). Indeed, RSS files are a nearly painless way to syndicate news and articles from one site to many. For instance, RSS files can be used to gather Slashdot news and Freshmeat releases, and display them on your Tiki. RDF is the Resource Description Framework, see links below.

Tiki is remarkably flexible when it comes to feeds. It can both display external feeds from other sites in user modules and elsewhere and syndicate its activities (blogs, articles, forums, etc.) via feeds.

The configuration of internal feeds (data Tiki provides for others to include into their site) is explained in this page, and the configuration of external feeds is explained in Feeds User.

This page is a mess. Configuration of external feeds should be merged with Feeds User.

Key Function and sub-features

Tiki has feeds for

- Articles
- Blog
- Directory
- File gallery
- Forum
- Image gallery
- Map
- Wiki pages
- Calendar
- tracker
You can find the feeds at the bottom bar (if it is switched on in admin menu):

You can click on any of those RSS icons at the bottom of the page in order to get the syndicated content from that Tiki section. Copy that URL and paste it in your favourite feed aggregator, email program, web site (provided they support collecting RSS feeds).

**Setting up feeds**

**Creating Feeds**

Tiki is set up to generate feeds from Blog, Image galleries, File galleries, the Calendar, Articles, Forums... -and more. To turn on the feature click Admin so you get the page with the little icons and choose the RSS icon. "Enable" the features you want to feed to the world. Save it and a little RSS icon will appear for users on pages where a feed is available.

Keep in mind that "outgoing" feeds of your own Tiki blogs, calendar, image and file galleries and articles can also be displayed within your own Tiki!(See Below for instructions.) This is a handy way to summarize content from one part of your site in another. I use it for file downloads where I've set up a file gallery -but rather than send people to the gallery I stick an RSS feed in the page for that group so they don't have to leave the page to download the file. No doubt you'll find more ways to use this powerful feature.

To use off site content:

**Get your feed:**
Go to the news site you you want to get a feed from. Click through to their RSS link. Copy the URL of the link from your browser.

**Subscribe to an external feed**
In Tiki, go to the Admin menu down the left side of your page (not the page with all the icons) and click on "External Feeds". Type a name for your feed (likely the name of the originating feed, say "New York Times") -this is so you can recognize it in the list you'll be making of all your feeds.

Enter a description if you like.

In the "url" box put the URL of the feed you copied in step one above.

Choose a "refresh rate": event calendar or news feeds might benefit from a fast refresh, - Blog maybe once a day -whatever floats your boat.
Click "show feed title" and "publish date" as these are handy pieces of info.

After you "Save" you'll see an external feeds list (with only one feed in it if this is your first one). This module tells Tiki where to pick up the feed (via the URL). Write down the "ID" number (likely "1" - again, if this is your first).

Embed Your Feed In Your Wiki Pages Or Module

Here's the easy part: while editing any wiki page (or within any user module) stick this bit in to get your feed displaying:

{rss=1 max=5}

...where "1" is the feed ID and max=5 is the maximum number of feed items to display (I have no idea if there are limits to the max number but it's more than 5!)

Save your page and voila! You'll have a feed where you want it.

Note that there are actually 2 different feed options. See the docs for details

There is the RSS wiki plugin, which uses the format:

{RSS(id=>XXX,max=>YYY,date=>1,author=>1,desc=>1)}{RSS}

But there is also an RSS Smarty function, that uses a slightly different format:

{rss id=XXX, max=YYY date=1 author=1 desc=1}

To combine feeds, use the following syntax:

{rss id=1:2:3:4 max=yyy date=1 author=1 desc=1}

(This needs more explanation)

**More information**

See this video (below) for more information on feeds in general, or click on any of the links below for more information on feeds in Tiki:

- [Feeds General Preferences](http://tiki.org)
- [Feeds Feeds](http://tiki.org)

"RSS in Plain English"
Alias

- RSS

Feeds General Preferences tab

Overview
Use this tab to configure the global options for all RSS feeds generated by Tiki.

To Access
From the Feeds Admin page, click the General Preferences tab.

Note
For details on the feed specifications, see:

- RSS: http://blogs.law.harvard.edu/tech/rss
- ATOM: http://www.atomenabled.org/developers/syndication/atom-format-spec.php

No Tabs
6.x
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default feed format:</td>
<td>Select the format for feeds generated by Tiki: ATOM or RSS</td>
<td>ATOM 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed author name:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed author email:</td>
<td><strong>Note: This field is mandatory unless both feed author email and homepage are empty.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed author homepage:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed editor email:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed webmaster email:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image path:</td>
<td></td>
<td>img/tiki/Tiki_WCG.png</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
<td></td>
<td>en-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caching time:</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: __ Enabling caching will override existing permissions - all content will be public. Enable this option only if your syndicated content should be public.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSS basic</td>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feeds**

**Overview**

Related Topics

- reference
Use this tab to enable the specific Tiki-generated feeds.

To Access
From the Feeds Admin page, click the Feeds tab.

No Tabs
6.x 5.x

SCREEN SHOT, thumbnail at 300px

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The available feeds and their meanings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feed</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>This feed lists the last n articles in your site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blogs</td>
<td>This feed lists the last n posts to blogs in your site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual Blog</td>
<td>This feed lists the last posts to a given Blog. (There's a feed for each weblog.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image galleries</td>
<td>This feed lists the last images uploaded to image galleries (any) in your site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Individual Image galleries</strong></td>
<td>This feed lists the last uploaded images to a given gallery. (There's a feed for each gallery.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>File galleries</strong></td>
<td>This feed lists the last n files uploaded to file galleries (any) in your site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Individual file galleries</strong></td>
<td>This feed lists the last files uploaded to a given file gallery. (There's a feed for each file gallery.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wiki</strong></td>
<td>This feed lists the last changes to the Wiki.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forums</strong></td>
<td>Lists the last n topics to the Forums (all the forums)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Individual Forum</strong></td>
<td>List the last n topics to a given forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trackers</strong></td>
<td>This feed lists the last (or first) n items for a tracker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Individual trackers items</strong></td>
<td>This feed lists the updates to a given tracker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calendar</strong></td>
<td>List the last n items in the given calendar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Directories</strong></td>
<td>List the last n sites new in all directories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Map files</strong></td>
<td>List the last n mapfiles new on the tiki site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

{FANCYTABLE}

---

**Connect page**

**Overview**

**Related Topics**

- [Tiki Community](http://tiki.org)
- [Tiki Sites](http://tiki.org)
- [Featured Tiki Sites](http://tiki.org)
Use this page to submit your site to the Tiki directory.

To access

Click the **Connect** icon on the [Admin Panel](http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=connect)
or

**Note**

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware is Free and Open Source Software (FOSS). It is a community-driven project which exists and improves thanks to the participation of people just like YOU!

---

**Connect page**

**Field**  
To submit your site to Tiki.org: Submit site

**Description**  
Click **Submit site** to submit your site to the Tiki directory.

Add a Powered by Tiki link on your site's footer

If enabled, Tiki adds a **Powered by Tiki** link in the site's bottom area.

---

**Advanced Ratings page**

**Overview**
Use this page to configure a "rating" system to evaluate tracker items or wiki pages.

To access

Click the Ratings icon on the Admin Panel or Access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=rating

No Tabs

6.x

Advanced Ratings page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Global configuration

Advanced Rating

Rating recalculation mode:

Recalculation odds (1 in X):

Recalculation count:

Wiki

Related Topics

- E-democracy system
- Bugs and Wishes
# Simple wiki ratings

Wiki rating options:

## Articles

User ratings on articles

Article rating options:

For wiki pages:

Thus, visitors can provide feedback like:

- Did this page help you solve the issue?
- Was this page easy to understand?

## alias

- **Ratings**

---

## Wiki Admin page

**Overview**

**Related Topics**

- [Wiki](http://tiki.org)
- [Bugs and Wishes](http://tiki.org)
Use this page to configure the [wiki](http://tiki.org) settings.

**To access**

Click the [Wiki](http://tiki.org) icon on the [Admin Panel](http://tiki.org) or


**Tabs**

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Wiki General Preferences](http://tiki.org)
- [Wiki Features](http://tiki.org)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](http://tiki.org)
- [Wiki Page Listings](http://tiki.org)
- [Wiki Tools](http://tiki.org)

**Note**

In Tiki 2 (and earlier) all Wiki options were on a single tab.

---

**Wiki General Preferences tab**

**Overview**

**Related Topics**

- reference
Use this tab to set the primary wiki options.

**To Access**
From the [Administer Wiki](http://tiki.org) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

**No Tabs**
6.x, 5.x, 4.x, 3.x, 2.x, 1.9.x
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Home Page</td>
<td>Landing page used for wiki when no page is specified. The page will be created if it does not exist.</td>
<td>HomePage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page display</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page Description</td>
<td>If enabled a description can be entered when editing a page and descriptions will be displayed below the page name when viewing a page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page Name as Page Title</td>
<td>Display the page name at the top of each page as page title. If not enabled, the page content should be structured to contain a header. If disabled no title will be displayed (and it will be hard to know what page you are editing!).</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display page name above page</td>
<td>If enabled, Tiki will display the page name in small text at the top of each page (above the page's content)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page ID</td>
<td>If enabled, the page's unique numeric ID will be displayed when viewing the page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page version</td>
<td>Display the page version information when viewing the page. As of Tiki 5.0, this information is only displayed when the List Authors preference is enabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List Authors</td>
<td>Changes the list format used to display the authors of the page. Listing options include last modification date/time and page version (if the Page version preference is enabled).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow override per page</td>
<td>If enabled, you can override the List Authors setting on a per-page basis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show/hide heading icon displayed before the heading:</td>
<td>For use with the !!- or !!+ syntax. Checking will display the showhide switch at the left of the heading, otherwise it displays below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki action bar location:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki navigation bar location:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki top line location:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki buttons:</td>
<td>Encourage contribution to wiki pages by anonymous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Page Name</strong></td>
<td>Used to control recognition of Wiki links using the two parenthesis Wiki link syntax: ((page name)) .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* <strong>Complete</strong>: allows anything at all but is not guaranteed to be bug-free or secure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that this only affects the Wiki syntax ((page name)) . It does not affect recognition of the Wiki naming convention of Smashed words starting with capital letters (example: ThisIsSomePage).</td>
<td>Complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki link format:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* <strong>Strict</strong>: Only be basic characters like a-z and 0-9. If you have accented or special characters in page names, you should not use strict.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevent special characters in page names</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page name display stripper:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content templates</td>
<td>If enabled, users editing a Wiki page can select a template for the page. A template is a pre-defined content for a Wiki page. See <a href="http://tiki.org">Content Templates</a> to learn how to create templates for wiki pages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn on edit conflict</td>
<td>If enabled then when a user is editing a page the edit button will be colored red and the name of the user editing the page will be displayed as a tooltip. If the user saves or cancels his or her edit or if the indicated amount of time passes the edit button will be displayed normally. This feature is useful to prevent collisions when editing pages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit idle timeout: minutes</td>
<td>Select the amount of time (in minutes) after which a user's edit session will expire. If the user does not save or preview their work, it will be lost. Tikiwiki will display a &quot;countdown time&quot; in the user's browser and display an alert when only a minute remains.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save draft</td>
<td>If enabled logged users can write personal footnotes when editing a page. The footnotes will be displayed only to the user who edited them immediately below the Wiki page. This can be used as a good way to let users make personal notes and observations about pages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnotes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow HTML</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn before page lock timeout</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit section level:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle display of section and plugin edit icons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow minor edits</td>
<td>Minor edits do not flag new content for translation and do not send watch notifications (unless &quot;Watch minor edits&quot; is enabled). Only user groups granted the tiki_p_minor permission (and admins) will be able to save minor edits when this is enabled. Permission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset to default</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force and limit categorization to within subtree of:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log bytes changes (+/-) in action logs</td>
<td>May impact performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory edit summary on wiki pages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
From the Tiki Config Panel, click the Wiki icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:

Dumps

A dump is a snapshot of your wiki pages in XHTML format. You can generate and download dumps for backups, off-line browsing, distribution on CD, presentations, and so on. Tiki stores your dumps in the ../dump directory in TAR format. Note that as of version 5.0, a dump does not include file attachments linked to by wiki pages.

You must enable the Dump option to use this feature.

Wiki Features tab

Overview

Related Topics

• Wiki
Use this tab to enable and configure specific wiki features.

**To Access**
From the [Administer Wiki](http://tiki.org) page, click the **Features** tab.

**Note**
In Tiki 2 (and earlier) all features were on a single page.

**No Tabs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6.x</th>
<th>5.x</th>
<th>4.x</th>
<th>3.x</th>
<th>2.x</th>
<th>1.9.x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**SCREEN SHOT, thumbnail at 300px**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sandbox</td>
<td>The <a href="http://tiki.org">Sandbox page</a> allows users to practice their Wiki page editing skills. The Sandbox is a special page where everybody has write permission and no history is saved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Comments below wiki pages**
- **Requires Wiki**
- **Manage comment settings**
- **Attachments**
- **Display by default**
- **Storage:**
  - Store in database
  - Store in directory
- **Path (if stored in directory):**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage attachments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dumps</td>
<td>If enabled, <strong>dumps</strong> can be created and saved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tag for current wiki:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore wiki to tag:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove a tag:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate dump</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download last dump</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use File Galleries to store pictures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove unused pictures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export</td>
<td>If enabled, users can <strong>missing parameter for aname</strong> individual pages and structure pages content as a file (requires tiki_p_admin_wiki permission).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permission Export</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki Pages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WikiWords</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accept dashes and underscores in WikiWords</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link plural WikiWords to their singular forms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>If enabled, users (with <strong>permission</strong>) can see the <strong>history</strong> of each Wiki page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of versions::</td>
<td>0 for unlimited versions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never delete versions younger than: days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display IP address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default diff style:</td>
<td>History all instead of only page data, description, and change comment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View page</td>
<td>contributions by author</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requires History</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss pages on forums</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum for discussion:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View source</td>
<td>If enabled users (with <a href="http://tiki.org">permission</a>) can see the Wiki syntax of the Wiki page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rating</td>
<td>This allows you to add a poll from <a href="http://tiki.org">polls feature</a> to any wiki page. The poll is unique to the page, created from a &quot;poll template&quot; which is created in the Polls feature: set a poll's 'active' drop-down to &quot;template&quot;. You may have to adjust your groups <a href="http://tiki.org">permissions</a> for tiki_p_wiki_view_ratings and tiki_p_wiki_vote_ratings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple wiki ratings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki rating options:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 210
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Backlinks</td>
<td>Allows users to view a list of pages, called backlinks, that link to the current page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name length:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic links</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect pages using these prefix alias semantic links:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar (like pages)</td>
<td>If enabled, users can see a listing of pages named similarly to the current page. <strong>Note</strong>: Prior to release 1.9.11, this option was called <strong>Like Pages</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar pages only listed in same language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rankings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open page as structure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make structure from page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Categorize structure pages together</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create webhelp from structure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A page can occur multiple times in a structure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure navigation bar location:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 211
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Import HTML</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import pages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideshows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect to similar wiki page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User's page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserPage prefix:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users can lock pages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page creators are admin of their pages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiPrint</td>
<td>If enabled a section is provided where a user can select several Wiki pages and then view them in a printer-friendly version. This can be used to print multiple pages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wiki Watch**

Create watch for author on page creation

Enable watch events when I am the editor

Enable watches on comments

Watch minor edits

Keywords
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Fieldset or section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Features tab of the Wiki Configuration page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Fieldset or section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Wiki Features area of the Wiki Configuration page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Fieldset or section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Wiki Page Staging and Approval

Requirements: This feature requires categories to be turned on and categories created before it will work (see below).

The information below may be a bit out of date now. For best results, see http://profiles.tiki.org/Staging_and_Approval

Introduced in Tiki2.

This feature is similar but different than the articles and submissions feature. Articles are like newspaper articles, once approved and published, they normally don't change. Whilst wiki pages are, by nature, always in flux.

Screencast: http://marclaporte.com/staging_approval/staging_launch.htm

This is a feature to allow wiki pages to be "staged" or drafted before they are approved (published). This is useful, for example, to have a staging area where open contributions are welcome, but at the same time to have an official pr published knowledge base that is extremely stable, hence needing some kind of approval before page changes are shown there. This feature works with the groups and categories features to have customizable access to pages with different status.

Example:
Documentation site has a policy that

- approved pages are visible to the public, but are updated (approved) only by senior editors.
- meanwhile any registered user can edit the draft version of the page, which is reviewed periodically and approved (or not) by senior editors.
Admin preferences and setup

The preferences under Wiki Config are explained here:

- **Use wiki page staging and approval**: If this is unchecked, the feature is completely off.
- **Unique Naming convention**: a prefix is used to indicate staging copy. **This is compulsory for the feature to work.** Basically staging copies of (approved) wiki pages are marked and recognized by having a prefix in front of their name. For example, if the prefix is set to "**", which is the default, the page "**Using Tiki" will be the staging copy of the page "Using Tiki". If you like, you can replace the prefix with something more meaningful, e.g. "On staging - ". Note, however, that if you change the prefix after initial configuration, you will need to rename the old staging copy pages in order to preserve the link between staging and approved versions. Otherwise, new staging copies based on the new prefix will begin to be used.
- **Hide page name prefix**: If selected, the prefix will be hidden in the page name that is shown on top of pages as they are viewed and edited (there is already will be a separate message on these pages to indicate to a user that he is viewing a page which is staging copy). The prefix is still shown on other pages, e.g. lists of pages, etc... as they will be relevant in those cases.
- **Category for staging pages**: It is highly recommended to select a category to put staging pages in. You can then set permissions for this category, for example, edit perms and view perms both for registered users only. When staging pages are edited, they are automatically placed in this category when a user saves the page. This happens regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user.
- **Category for approved pages**: **This is compulsory for the feature to work.** You have to select a category to put all approved pages in. You can then set permissions for this category, for example, edit perms for system admins only, and view perms for everyone. The edit button of pages that are in this category will be redirected to the staging page, providing convenient access to edit the staging instead of the approved page. This edit button will be shown based on the edit perms the user has for the staging page, not the approved page. If the staging page does not exist yet, it will be created transparently. In the above example, if you click on edit while viewing "Using Tiki", you will be sent to edit "**Using Tiki". Note, though, that you can still edit the approved page manually by accessing tiki-editpage.php url directly, e.g. tiki-editpage.php?page=Using Tiki, unless you set the "Force bounce..." setting below. Approved pages will automatically be placed in this category when they are approved. This happens regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user.
- **Category for pages out of sync**: If "Delete staging pages at approval" is not activated, it is highly recommended to select a category to identify pages that are out of sync. When a user saves edits to staging pages, they are automatically placed in this category regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user. At the same time, when these staging pages are approved, they are taken out of that category. If this setting is off, staging pages are always considered "out of sync" and there will be no indication, so setting this is really useful. Moreover, you can review pages that are out of sync through browsing the category.
- **Force Redirect of editing of approved pages to staging**: As mentioned above, you can already limit edit permissions by user group under Category Admin. However, if you really want to, you can force redirect all requests of tiki-editpage.php for pages in the approved
pages category to go to the staging copy. This may be useful to totally prevent direct editing of the approved version through direct tiki-editpage URL. NOTE: Even WITHOUT this selected the edit icons will redirect the user to edit the staging copy - it just does not prevent direct URL access.

- **Categorize approved pages with categories of staging copy on approval**: If selected, the categorization of the approved page is set to that of the staging page upon approval, with the exception that auto-categorization of the special categories configured in this system are not affected (on approval, the approved copy will not have the category for staging pages set, and will continue to have the category for approved pages set).

- **Replace freetags with those from staging pages on approval**: If selected, this replaces the freetags set on the approved page to those in the staging page upon approval.

- **Copy new freetags of approved copy (to tags field) when editing staging pages**: If selected, when a user edits a staging page, freetags that are in the approved copy but not in the staging page will automatically be inserted into the freetags field. An editor/document reviewer will have a chance to change these tags before his final edit before approving.

- **Delete staging pages at approval**: As soon as a page is approved the staging page is deleted.

- **If not in the group, edit is always redirected to the staging page edit**: This allow you to create new pages in a staging status.

If configuration of staging and approval appears not to work, try clearing cache in System Admin between steps

**Sample use case**

This is not meant to be definitive, but has been tested to work.

2 groups: author / approver
2 categories: staged / approved

1. An author creates a page XXXX in the staged category.
2. If category notification set, approver receives a message.
3. Anyone can edit the page while it remains in the staged category.
4. An approver approves the page for the 1st time by categorizing it to approved category.
5. Tiki automatically creates a page *XXXX with the staged category and without the approved category.
6. An author can see the page *XXXX and edits it again. If he tries to edit XXXX, tw redirects him to edit *XXXX. An approver is also redirected to edit *XXXX if he tries to edit XXXX.
7. If category notification set, approver receives a message whoever edits *XXXX. Alternatively, approvers can check the "Out of Sync" category for pages that have edits not yet approved.
8. When ready, an approver approves the page, by clicking on "approve" that appear on top of *XXXX. Moreover, if not ready, the authors/approvers/ etc.. can all conduct edit war on the *XXXX until they are happy, before approving.
Because no one edits the approved page directly, there is no chance of conflict, at the cost of a small inconvenience to approvers.

Features that will be apparent

- A link to approve a page appears while viewing staging pages if they are out of sync.
- A link to show page history since the last approval (a diff) appears while viewing staging pages if the pages are out of sync. The determination of the version is based on the last edit date/time of the approved page, so it will not be correct if the approved page has been edited directly without going through the staging copy, another reason to use the "Force bounce option" above, but it is foreseeable that admins may want to be able to directly edit the approved page and consider that an "approved" version, so it depends on your needs.
- A note appears on the edit page screen indicating to a user that he is editing a staging page and if the page is out of sync.

Important notes about creating new pages

- When creating new pages as someone with permission to the approved category, place the page in the category for approved pages if this is a page that needs to be staged.
- When creating new pages as someone without permission to the approved category, it really doesn't matter in which category the page is stored. However, this page cannot be "approved" the automated way until it is approving for the first time by someone with permission to include it in the category for approved pages. For convenient locating of new items created by these users, it is possible (using another feature), to set the default category to a category you can create such as "New Pages", for the different groups/levels of contributors as you need.

Important admin notes

- Changing the categories settings explained above after initial install will require moving of pages to new categories to make sure that those specific features still work for those pages.
- Renaming or changing parent of categories have no effect (the system refers to categories by their ID, not name).
- Change the prefix setting after initial install will require Renaming the old staging copy pages in order to preserve the "link" between staging and approved versions.
- Direct Renewing of staging pages have been blocked in tiki-rename.php for usability reasons, and Renaming of pages now checks and renames staging copies as well (based on prefix) if this feature feature_wikiapproval is on. Admins that have custom code doing Renaming of pages should be careful.
See attached comment for an example of perms

Limitations

- Wiki page attachments are not handled
- Structures are not handled

Profile

http://profiles.tiki.org/Staging_and_Approval

alias

- Staging
- Approval
- Flagged revision
- Flagged revisions
- Staging and Approval
- Wiki Staging and Approval

File Galleries

The file galleries feature can be a site repository or download manager for all types of files: images, video, audio, podcasts, text, software (releases, patches, docs), etc., etc. Files uploaded into file galleries can easily be displayed or linked from Wiki pages, articles, or blog posts.

File galleries are created and configured through the Tiki interface. Use the Tiki permissions system to specify who can create galleries, upload, download and delete files, etc. Statistics are kept of each download. You can produce stats for the most downloaded files, most visited file galleries and last uploaded files.
# Table of contents

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
  - [Related](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [How it works](#)
    - [Group membership and permissions](#)
    - [How anonymous binding works](#)
  - [Settings](#)
    - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
    - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Unix](#)
    - [Active Directory](#)
    - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
  - [Debugging](#)
    - [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
      - [Certificate Problems](#)
  - [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
    - [LDAP §4d9a8a5b266536ef45aee318486af674§ General Settings Overview](#)
    - [LDAP §6013814ea94deff52f678ac3c4682a78§ Troubleshooting](#)
  - [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [Aliases](#)
    - [AuthPAM](#)
• Admin Documentation
• Requirements for AuthPAM
• Permissions!
• Security Issues

• PAM Authentication tab
  • Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
  • Intro
  • Mod phpcas
  • Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
  • Install

• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration
    • phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options

• Community Administration
• User Features tab
• Community General Settings Tab
  • General Description
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Typical Uses
• Friendship Network tab
• Admin Profiles Page
  • For more information
• Alias
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
• Apply Profiles tab
• Profiles Advanced tab
• Look & Feel
  • Alias
    • Key Function and sub-features
    • Examples
      • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
• And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo

• Theme tab
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
    • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo

• General Layout Options tab
• Shadow Layer tab
• Pagination Links tab
• UI Effects tab
• Custom CSS tab
• Miscellaneous tab
• Internationalization (i18n)
  • Overview
• Babelfish Links
• Customized String Translation tab
  • Feature Modules
  • User's Configuration Modules
  • Navigation Modules
  • Recent Changes Modules
  • "Best of" Modules
  • Help and Support Modules
  • Search Modules
  • MyTiki Modules
  • Miscellaneous Modules

• Modules
  • Modules vs. Plugins
  • Related pages

• Tiki Modules
  • More information,

• Meta Tags Config
• Meta Tags Configuration page
• Performance Admin page
• Performance Tab
• Bytecode Cache Tab
• Wiki tab
• Database tab
• Memcache tab
• Plugins tab
• Major Slowdown tab
• Sessions tab
  • General Security
  • Spam Protection
  • Search Results
  • Site Access
• **Tokens**
  • **Clipperz Online Password Management**
• **Security Administration**
  • **Prevent automatic/robot registration**
• **Spam Protection tab**
• **Clipperz online password manager**
• **Comments Admin page**
• **Comments**
• **Alias**
• **Feeds Admin page**
• **Feeds**
  • **Overview**
  • **Key Function and sub-features**
  • **Setting up feeds**
  • **More information**
  • **Alias**
• **Feeds General Preferences tab**
• **Feeds**
• **Connect page**
• **Advanced Ratings page**
• **Wiki Admin page**
  • **Dumps**
• **Wiki General Preferences tab**
• **Wiki Features tab**
• **Wiki Page Staging and Approval**
  • **Admin preferences and setup**
  • **Sample use case**
  • **Features that will be apparent**
  • **Important notes about creating new pages**
  • **Important admin notes**
• **Limitations**
• **Profile**
• **File Galleries**
  • **Key features**
  • **File Gallery improvements in Tiki6**
  • **File Gallery improvements in Tiki5**
  • **File Gallery improvements in Tiki3**
• **From Here**
• **Alias**
• **See Also**
Key features

- Folders and Sub-folders with permissions
- Keeps archives (so you can still access previous versions of a file)
- Check-in / check-out / lock
- **WebDAV** access
- Drafts

File Gallery improvements in Tiki6

Starting in Tiki6, file in file galleries can have drafts, like Wiki pages.

File Gallery improvements in Tiki5

Starting in Tiki5, file galleries can be accessed via WebDAV.

File Gallery improvements in Tiki3

Starting in Tiki3, file galleries can also support image galleries, with image browsing, and dynamic insertion of wiki syntax to add an image to a wiki page.

**File Gallery to produce image galleries**

File galleries have been improved in a way that they can handle images also, and act *de facto* as image galleries, or podcast galleries, etc., with added features on them. This is to end up in newer tiki releases reducing code duplication between file galleries and image galleries, and users confusion on where to save and find files (whatever type they are). In the same way, in later Tiki releases, file galleries might also handle file attachments to wiki pages, ...

File Gallery diaporama

Improved file gallery diaporama.
Moreover, File galleries are closer to replace image galleries, since they include most (if not all) the previous functionality from image galleries, and benefit from the improvements in the file galleries.

Examples:

New file types recognized by tiki
New file type icons have been added to file galleries in order to recognize and visualize them accordingly. They include: .7z, .flv, .mp4, .odg, odp, .ods, .odt, .ogm, .ogv, .svg.

From Here

- File Gallery General Settings
- Gallery Listings
- Admin Gallery Listings
- Gallery Search Indexing

Alias

- File Galleries
- Virtual disk
- DMS
- Document Management System
See Also

- multimedia file types

Blogs

An abbreviation for Weblog, the term "blog" refers to a collection of related posts, which are sorted (by default) in reverse chronological order (the most recent posts are shown first).

Some blogs have a single author, who uses the blog to keep what amounts to an online diary: a day-to-day record of the individual's varied thoughts, reflections, and pertinent Web links. Other blogs contain posts from two or more authors; typically, these blogs focus on a more or less well-defined topic, such as sci-fi movie reviews. In schools and colleges, blogs are increasingly used to facilitate student journals.

TikiWiki's Blogs feature enables users to enjoy all the best features of weblogs (including RSS output, trackback pings, and remote posting via Blogger-compatible programs, such as w.Bloggar), but without the hassle (and, often, the expense) of using commercial blogging services.

A TikiWiki site can be set up to display a blog as its home page (see General Admin). This means you can use TikiWiki as an alternative to less-feature-rich alternatives, such as Moveable Type.

Feature Overview

TikiWiki’s Blogs feature enables administrators to set up as many blogs as they like, or administrators can give users permission to create their own blogs. Blogs can be accessed by listing them (Menu/Blogs/List Blogs) or by creating a link to one or more blogs in a custom menu.

Blog configuration options include the number of posts to display, whether other users are allowed to post in the blog, and whether searches and comments are allowed. In addition, the blog heading
can be edited; by default, it displays the date of creation and last modification, the total number of posts and visits, and a figure that sums up the blog's activity level.

When posting to a blog, users can choose between the textarea or WYSIWYG editors; posting options include title and one or more trackback URLs. (See "About Trackback," below.) Users can also take advantage of TikiWiki's implementation of Blogger's XMLRPC protocol, which enables users to use a Blogger-compatible program (such as wBloggar) to post to their TikiWiki blogs (see "About XMLRPC," below).

**About Trackback**

The Trackback protocol, developed by Moveable Type, provides a blog author with a very convenient, low-bandwidth way to tell other blog authors that their posts have been referenced and discussed. For example, suppose you've just read a post on blog A. You post to your blog (Blog and discuss the Blog A post. When you save your post, you include the trackback URL. TikiWiki then sends a trackback ping (actually, it's not a ping, but a short message conforming to the Trackback protocol) to Blog A; Blog A's author can then see that you've posted something that's related. Now suppose the Blog A author posts something about YOUR post. When you look at your post, you'll see a list of trackback pings (including the page title, URL, and blog name). For more information on using trackback, see Blog User.

**About XMLRPC**

TikiWiki implements the XMLRPC standard developed by Blogger, a popular commercial blogging site. This standard is an application programming interface (API), which means that any application conforming to the standard can upload content to Blogger — or any service that conforms to the same API on the receiving end. For this reason, any application that correctly implements the Blogger XMLRPC API can be used to post and edit content in Tiki blogs. To use Blogger XMLRPC API with a Tiki, enable it in the Features panel. You can then use Tiki blogs using desktop applications like wBloggar.
Blog Revamp

In Tiki6 the Blog has been revamped. See Blog Revamp

(The image shows a blog layout that can be achieved using Look and Feel configuration settings; an "Easy Blog" Profile is being made to simplify the configuring process. The "Even Monkeys" theme files will be available at themes.tikiwiki.org.)

More documentation

• Blog Listings

• Blogs TikiMovie
  View in action click after click how to use Blogs in a Flash movie.
• ArticleVsBlog comparison

Related Information

• To enable blogs for your site, see General Admin.
• To enable the XMLRPC API, see Features Admin.
• To choose configuration options for all blogs on your site, see Blog Config.
• To specify permissions for blog users, see Permissions for the general procedure.
• To create and use a blog, see Blog User.
• To configure the popular wBloggar blog-posting tool for use with TikiWiki, see wBloggar.

Useful Links

• Moveable Type
  http://www.moveabletype.org
• Blogger
  http://new.blogger.com
• wBloggar
  http://wbloggar.com/
See FILE GALLERIES instead from Tiki 3 onwards
In Tikiwiki 3.0 Image galleries are being phased out in favor of a combined/improved File Galleries section which handles all file types. For new tiki installation, See File gallery instead.

Image galleries are collections of images. If the Image Gallery feature is enabled in your Tiki installation, you can create public or private galleries and upload images to them from your local hard drive or another Internet URL. Tiki automatically creates thumbnail versions of your uploaded images; you don't have to do so yourself. Galleries can be used for photo albums of course, but also creatively for other applications such as product "showrooms".

Feature Overview

The following is a short list of Image Gallery features:
• Enable or disable the Image Gallery feature.
• Set display of listing fields, such as description or created date.
• Make a gallery public or private, and control its permissions.
• Create, modify and delete galleries.
• Adjust auto-thumbnailing settings.
• Set the number of thumbnail rows and columns.
• Categorize your galleries.
• Upload images from URL or disk. (NOTE: To upload a lot of pictures at once, upload a .zip file containing all of your image files and tikiwiki will automatically unzip the image files and enter them into the gallery for you).
• Override auto-thumbnailing by uploading your own thumbnails.
• Enter a name for your uploaded image, or, let Image Gallery use the filename.
• Put coordinates on images and display them using the maps feature.
• Directory Batch Loading to upload your images by scp, ftp, etc
• Batch upload (upload .zip which is decompressed on the server)

From Here

• To enable Image Galleries for your Tiki site, see General Admin.
• To read the user manual for Image Galleries, see Image Gallery User.
• To learn about administering Image Galleries, see Image Gallery Config.

Useful Links

alias

• Image Galleries

Articles

Table of contents

• Tiki Reference Guide
• General Administration
• General Preferences tab
• General Settings tab
• Navigation tab
• Date and Time tab
  • Date and Time Formats
• Change Admin Password tab
• Features Admin
• Global Features
• Interface
• Programmer
• New
• Experimental
  • Related
• Alias
• Login Administration page
• General Preferences
  • Case Sensitivity
  • Remember Me
  • Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity
  • CustomFields
• LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4
  • Changes
  • How it works
    • Group membership and permissions
    • How anonymous binding works
  • Settings
    • How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use
    • How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki
  • Examples
    • Unix
    • Active Directory
    • Zimbra LDAP
• Debugging
• Common Problems and Workarounds
  • Certificate Problems
• LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X
  • LDAP §4d9a8a5b266536ef45aee318486af674§ General Settings Overview
  • LDAP §6013814ea94deff52f678ac3c4682a78§ Troubleshooting
• LDAP Authentication tab
• Aliases
  • AuthPAM
    • Admin Documentation
    • Requirements for AuthPAM
    • Permissions!
    • Security Issues
• PAM Authentication tab
• Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
• Intro
  • Mod phpcas
• Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
• Install
• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration
    • phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options
• Community Administration
• User Features tab
• Community General Settings Tab
  • General Description
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Typical Uses
• Friendship Network tab
• Admin Profiles Page
  • For more information
• Alias
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
• Apply Profiles tab
• Profiles Advanced tab
• Look & Feel
• Alias
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
- And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo

- **Theme tab**
  - Key Function and sub-features
  - Examples
    - Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
    - And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo

- **General Layout Options tab**
- **Shadow Layer tab**
- **Pagination Links tab**
- **UI Effects tab**
- **Custom CSS tab**
- **Miscellaneous tab**
- **Internationalization (i18n)**
  - Overview
- **Babelfish Links**
- **Customized String Translation tab**
  - Feature Modules
  - User's Configuration Modules
  - Navigation Modules
  - Recent Changes Modules
  - "Best of" Modules
  - Help and Support Modules
  - Search Modules
  - MyTiki Modules
  - Miscellaneous Modules

- **Modules**
  - Modules vs. Plugins
  - Related pages

- **Tiki Modules**
  - More information,

- **Meta Tags Config**
- **Meta Tags Configuration page**
- **Performance Admin page**
- **Performance Tab**
- **Bytecode Cache Tab**
- **Wiki tab**
- **Database tab**
- **Memcache tab**
- **Plugins tab**
- **Major Slowdown tab**
- **Sessions tab**
  - General Security
  - Spam Protection
  - Search Results
  - Site Access
• Tokens
• Clipperz Online Password Management
• Security Administration
  • Prevent automatic/robot registration
• Spam Protection tab
• Clipperz online password manager
• Comments Admin page
• Comments
• Alias
• Feeds Admin page
• Feeds
  • Overview
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Setting up feeds
  • More information
  • Alias
• Feeds General Preferences tab
• Feeds
• Connect page
• Advanced Ratings page
• Wiki Admin page
  • Dumps
• Wiki General Preferences tab
• Wiki Features tab
• Wiki Page Staging and Approval
  • Admin preferences and setup
  • Sample use case
    • Features that will be apparent
    • Important notes about creating new pages
    • Important admin notes
• Limitations
• Profile
• File Galleries
  • Key features
  • File Gallery improvements in Tiki6
  • File Gallery improvements in Tiki5
  • File Gallery improvements in Tiki3
• From Here
• Alias
• See Also
• Blogs
  • Feature Overview
  • About Trackback
  • About XMLRPC
  • Blog Revamp
Articles and submissions are one of the central features of the TikiWiki Content Management System (CMS). With articles you can build the foundation for a site like those constructed using CMS systems like PHPNuke or Postnuke with the added advantages of Tiki. Articles are always displayed in the articles section, but can also be included in wiki pages via the pluginArticles and in the side columns using Module Last Articles.

Unlike Wiki pages, articles are typically not modified after having been published. They have several attributes, including a "publish date".

See also Multilingual Article.

There are three structural components for the Articles sub-system: Topics, Articles and Submissions.

- Topics - Each item belongs to one, and only one, topic. You can also assign multiple categories to each item.
- Article - The actual content item that gets displayed, commented on, etc.
- Submission - This is an article that hasn't been approved yet by an authorized admin.

Feature Overview

Topics

Articles and submissions are classified in topics. You can edit topics from the admin topics screen. **Note:** You must create a topic before anyone can submit an article!

In this screen you can add and remove topics or you can activate/deactivate topics without removing them. You can also click the perms link to assign permissions to the topic.

The permissions for topic works as follows:

- If no permission is assigned to the topic then everybody can read articles or reviews in this
• If the tiki_p_read_topic permission is assigned for the topic only the groups with the permission can view the topic and other users won't see content in the topic (Articles, reviews, etc). This can be used to manage private topics that only users in some groups can read.

NB: Topics are not categories. Topic is only for articles, category is for a lot of Tikiwiki objects.

In the menu, click on Admin Topics:

The admin topic panel allows you to set the config:

**Article Types**

The article "type" defines the overall settings for a specific article; things like:

• Can visitors post comments to articles?
• Does the article "expire" after a specific date.
• And more.

There are currently 4 different article types:

• Article - Normal type, only displays in "Article Home" after the publication date.
• Review - Articles with reader-added ratings. Only displays in "Article Home" after the publication date.
• Event - Used for showing upcoming events or to automatically remove content from your site. Events display until the "Publication/Event Date". Switching the type between article and event should cause it to appear and disappear from the Article Home page. (Note: Events are a v1.8 feature)
• Classifieds

You can change or delete these article types to match your need and you can create as many articles types you want

In the menu, click on Admin Types.

The admin type panel allows you to set the config

From Here

• To enable articles for your site, see General Admin.
• ArticleVsBlog comparison

• Articles General Settings
• Articles Listing

Alias

• Article
• Submission
• Submissions
• Topic
• Topics
Forums

Forums are one of the more frequently used features in Tikiwiki.

Feature Overview

Welcome to one of the most interesting features in Tiki: the forums system, the concepts are very simple:

- A forum is a collection of topics (also called threads) about a subject. You can have a forum to discuss a product, movies, sports, the weather; anything you think of.
- A topic/thread is a collection of messages (also called posts) in a particular forum.
- A post/message is a message a user has submitted about a particular topic.
Trackers (Overview)

What are Trackers?

Using Trackers, you can create forms for collecting data and make reports from that data. Trackers can combine structured information collected from users; the feature is a powerful, flexible tool. Originally, trackers were used to collect and manage bugs. They evolved into an open-ended system where you can track any kind of user input in a customizable form. Each tracker has its own mini database. Trackers operate as a standalone feature, and can be fully integrated within wiki pages. Users with the appropriate permissions can devise trackers to collect any kind of information they want. Combining trackers and the wiki makes Tiki a [Structured Wiki](http://tiki.org).

Also see: [Forum and Mailing List Synchronization](http://tiki.org), which can be used to archive messages from a mailing list into a Tiki forum and back.
Trackers
This demo shows how to create a tracker and tracker fields. It then demonstrates two methods to populate the tracker and display the tracker information. Thanks to Tiki for Smarties

Trackers can:

- be used to collect additional data from users upon registration.
- be used like a customizable articles feature with admin definable forms
- assist workflows by tracking tasks.
- act as expanded polls, surveys or quizzes
- import and export their settings and data.
- Have customized templates to submit and display your information with a Pretty Tracker

Trackers can't yet: (but it improves with each version)

- do extensive calculations - the calculations are limited.

Four Steps to make a Tracker

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Help Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Create</td>
<td>Admin names the tracker and assigns overall parameters and permissions</td>
<td>Creating a Tracker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Add</td>
<td>Admin defines the columns and type of information collected</td>
<td>Adding fields to a tracker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. **Submit Items** to the tracker  
Users fill out the forms to create *items* in the tracker  

4. **View or List** the results  
Use tracker plugins to view a customized tracker output in a page  

5. **Assign Trackers to Groups**  
optional - trackers can also be used upon registration.

What can Trackers be used for?

Trackers can recreate online any kind of table or spreadsheet, not including the fancy formatting or calculations.

- support tickets
- contact managers
- feature requests
- purchase orders
- bug reports
- feedback reports
- news submissions
- project management

Next Page . . .

- [Creating a Tracker](http://tiki.org)
- [Adding Fields to a Tracker](http://tiki.org)
- [Adding Items to a Tracker](http://tiki.org)

Example: Department Staff
Demos of Trackers used for production

- Visit http://tiki.org/Trackers to see a list of some Tiki sites (as examples) using them at production level.
- You can import the tracker definition used for dev.tiki.org

Related links


Tracker Plugins:

1. PluginTracker: Create a form in a wiki page (to populate a tracker)
2. PluginTrackerFilter: Display a dynamic report in a wiki page (from the data in a tracker)
3. PluginTrackerItemField: This plugin allows you to display or to test the value of a field of a tracker item.
4. PluginTrackerList: Display a report in a wiki page (from the data in a tracker)
5. PluginTrackerPrefill
7. PluginTrackerTimeline
8. Plugin Tracker Advanced

Profiles

Profiles making use of trackers
http://profiles.tiki.org/Bug_Tracker

 Alias

- Tracker
- Form
- Forms
- Form Generator
- Questionnaire
- Questionnaires
• **CRUD Create, read, update and delete (CRUD)** is done with Trackers.

---

## Polls

Polls are a commonly used in community and news oriented sites to help reveal popular opinion or for decision making. For example, the Tikiwiki Community has always used polls to decide the titles of each Tiki Release since 1.0. Polls are only one way to ask questions to users.

### Alternatives to Polls:

• **Surveys** - can include multiple questions (polls only ask one).
• **Quiz** - is a survey with a fixed amount of time to answer it - can be used for online tests.
• **Trackers** is a more robust way to collect input from users and display collected results.

---

## Related Pages

**Pages about this feature:** [Poll Admin](http://tiki.org)

---

## Using Polls

To begin using Polls, first activate the feature in the ADMIN-->General screen.

Note: for version 2.2 (and possibly others) a poll template selected in the Wiki edit screen will only be saved to the database if the Categories feature is also enabled.

Tiki you can create as many polls as you want. zero to n polls in the Tiki pages. You can also have a set of several active polls and display only one poll in a page. In that case, Tiki will rotate through the set of polls. Users with the right permission can see poll results, examine old polls and vote in any poll that is not closed.
Polls as a Plugin

- PluginPoll

Polls as a Side Module

Once you have activated the polls feature you can assign a poll to side module using Create new user module under Admin Modules, see Modules.
(Copy this template into any feature page and use as a format guide.)

Permissions

Polls and Anonymous

It is possible to allow an anonymous to vote by activating the feature in admin->polls and assigning tiki_p_vote permission to Anonymous (admin->groups). In tikiwiki 1.9, Anonymous can vote as many times as they want. In version 2.0, Anonymous can vote only one time during their php session (check admin->phpinfo->session.gc_maxlifetime to have an idea of the minimum time a session last - depending on your server setting and the activity of your site, it can be longer).

Poll templates

A poll template is a poll used for Rating, such as to ask "Was this page helpful?". The poll template can be added to a Wiki pages or a Tracker. The Category feature must be enabled.

The steps are:

- create a template poll
- create the poll option
- enable admin->wiki->rating
• when editing a page, give the poll to the field 'Use rating'

And it will look like this in a wiki page

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

alias

• Poll

---

Calendar

New in version 2 and version 3

[+] Version 2.0 saw some major enhancements to the calendar

• New look of calendars in every views, especially in week view which is now displayed with hours details. Events on multiple days are also better displayed. In week view, when there is more than 3 events, a special zone will be displayed and the overbox will contain all details,

• New recurrence feature to have the same event each week/month/year between two dates or for X occurrences. An event from an occurrence can be modified later. When modifying an event from a recurrence, TikiWiki will ask the user if he wants to change only the current event, all the events of the recurrence, or events of the recurrence which were not already modified,

• New iCal export feature,

• New option to choose the calendars to display by default. Also keep in database the user last calendar choices in order to keep use the same filter when he comes back,

• New "standard colors" when creating a calendar to ease the choice of calendar colors
General

There are several time/date & calendar-related features:

- The **Mini Calendar**: MyTiki's personal calendar. A simple appointment list.
- The **Calendar**: Tiki's main calendar. This can display:
  - The **Tools Calendars** which report system-created lists of changes/additions, such as the creation or edit of a wiki page, upload of a file, including date and time, user, and description. This requires the permission tiki_p_view_tiki_calendar.
  - The **Event Calendars** which show user created information such as events or appointments, and requires the permission tiki_p_view_calendar. Different calendars can be created, with distinct permissions for each. It is also possible to setup a Personal calendar here. This duplicates the mini-calendar feature but with integration with the other calendars (so you can see in one view both your personal events and the other events).
- The feature **jscalendar** adds a nifty date picker to Event Calendars. (and trackers)
- The **modules** calendar and calendar_new add a small calendar to a lateral column with events in hover boxes

Example

Example of usage in a wiki page through the plugin module and several modules inside.

Key Function and Sub-features

- Calendar tab provides view of appointments for a time period set by administrator
- Event tab allows for event scheduling
- Events can be all day long.
- Several categories for simple selection.
- Import Events from a CSV - using url/tiki-calendar_import.php
- You can change your site's date and time preferences in url/tiki-admin.php?page=general

Related Links

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 245
• Calendar User
• Calendar Admin
• Js Calendar
• Module calendar_new
• Tiki event management system

Alias

• User Calendar
• Calendars
• mini-calendar
• event
• calendar of events
• event calendar
• Scheduling

Categories
**General Description**
Categories are a way to classify Tiki objects, including blogs, image galleries, articles, polls, forums, wiki pages, file galleries. It is similar to, but different from tags and structures. Any Tiki object including wiki pages, blog posts, forum topics, calendars, trackers... can be added to one or many categories.

Categories are often used to control access to different sets of content. Setting permissions for a category will **override** global permissions for objects in that category.

Example: A "public" category for anonymous users. If the global permissions in tikiwiki are set such that anonymous users cannot see wiki pages, then you can define a category called public, which does allow the group anonymous users to view the content. Then by adding a wiki page to category public - this page will now be visible without logging in.

Categories can also be used to aid navigation or create a taxonomy of objects. Categories are a tool that persists for all features, not just for wiki or articles or trackers. Depending on the settings, category listings can be displayed in a side module, above or below the content. Menus, modules and structures are also used for navigation, and categories for access control. Articles also use topics for classification.

---

**Key Functioning and sub-features**

- Organize categories in a tree hierarchy with unlimited subcategories.
- Assign objects to one or many categories
- Administrators can apply different permissions to different categories.
- Administrators can apply different themes to different categories.
- Deep search into subcategories from the category browser
- On wiki pages, you can show the category path and/or show objects in the same category(ies)
- Manage Category Transitions (Tiki4)

---

**Category Permissions**

The way that category permissions work has changed substantially over time.

Up to version 1.9.11, a user with edit permission for a type of object is allowed to edit any object which they can view. In version 2.0 the tiki_p_edit_categorized permission allows editing of objects with the user's categories. See also Categories Details.
Starting in Tiki4, all permissions can be added to categories, and Category Transitions are introduced.

By changing the theme from one category to the next it is possible to create visually distinct "zones" in a tikiwiki site.

Related Plugins

- PluginCategory - creates a table of contents using categories.
- PluginCatpath - creates a "breadcrumbs" trail
- PluginCatorphans - displays uncategorized pages.

Related Modules

- Module change_category Powerful display and modifications of category of current object.
- Module categories Displays category tree.

Related Links

- Category User - explains how to navigate and search categories
- Category Admin - how to set up categories, and apply themes and permissions
- Categories Details - plugins, tweaks and other technical details.

Alias

- Categories
- Category Tree
- Facet
- Facets
- Faceted classification
- Categories Admin
Score

This feature is a game to motivate people to participate in the community. Users are given points for things they do in the site, like writing an article, reading an article, starting a new topic in forum, voting a poll, etc. They also earn points by being popular, like having his/her blogs and articles read and commented. Then the users will be able to see their position in a ranking.

Module users_rank from scores

This feature is implemented in version 1.9

How scoring works

- Users get an amount of points for events related to them
- The amount of points is configurable
- Users are ranked according to points earned
- Events can be repeated or not. For example, earning 5 points for each hour logged in.

How stars work

Users are awarded color stars depending on their total score:
• grey ( ) : between 0 and 99 points.
• blue ( ) : between 100 and 499 points.
• green ( ) : between 500 and 999 points.
• yellow ( ) : between 1,000 and 2,499 points.
• orange ( ) : between 2,500 and 4,999 points.
• red ( ) : between 5,000 and 9,999 points.
• purple ( ) : 10,000 points or more.

Typical Uses

The Score system is good for small and starter sites, to motivate new users to contribute. This can also help administrators to focus activity in one or two areas by granting more points to these areas, so that small communities won't get dispersed with lots of tools in the beginning.

Related pages

• Module users_rank
• Score Admin
• Score Details
• Karma
• Score vs Karma
Tags

This page is about Freetags, which is the folksonomy implementation of TikiWiki. The name is based on the name of the underlying library from Gordon Luk: http://www.getluky.net/freetag/.

Though similar in function to categories, freetags work somewhat differently. Also, freetags should not be confused with backlinks-to-index style tags discussed further at How To Tag.

Basically folksonomy tagging means/is based on:

• everybody can assign keywords to anything
• bottom-up instead of top-down categorization
• from chaos comes order
• emergent patterns are more powerful than imposition of categories

See: Multilingual tags

What can I tag within Tiki?

You can currently tag:

• Wiki pages
• Blog posts
• Image gallery & individual images
• File gallery
• Trackers & individual tracker items
• Quiz
• Polls
• Surveys
• Directory
• Faqs
• Spreadsheet
• Articles
Modules

- **freetag**: that allows to add and remove tag from a current object
- **freetags_current**: that displays the current tags of an object. Only for a wiki page.
- **freetags_prefered**: Shows the favorite tags of a user. The number of tags is the value of the parameter rows defined at the module assignment.
- **freetags_most_popular**: Shows the most popular tags. The number of tags is the value of the parameter rows defined at the module assignment.
- **freetags_morelikethis**: Shows the objects that have the same tags than an object. Only for a wiki page. The number of objects is the value of the parameter rows defined at the module assignment.

User

When offered to do so (for instance, editing wiki pages), just enter your tags into the textfield separated by spaces.

You can browse the available tags by clicking on one, when seeing it somewhere.

It will take you to tiki-browse_freetags.php with the tag centered in the morcego browser, if that feature is enabled.
The syntax of a tag is defined by the admin setting. Tags are separated by space(s). If you want to enter a tag with a space - if the admin setting allows it, you must enclose it into double quotes. Example: in the module freetag, if you enter: "computer science" ibm pc, you will add 3 tags "computer science", "ibm" and "pc"

Note about usage in features different than wiki pages:
For the moment, you can only use freetags in module - the module finds out for what object the freetag has been added looking at the url param.

Admin

In order to go to the admin screen, use this url: tiki-admin.php?page=freetags

Freetag Browsing

- Only accept alphanumeric ASCII freetags (no accents or special chars): If checked all non-alphabetical characters are withdrawn in the tag. Example: free_movie will become freemovie.
- Or valid characters pattern: It is possible if the previous box is not checked to explicitly tell what characters are not wiped off. Only alphanumeric freetags is the pattern a-zA-Z0-9. If you want to include space and _, the pattern can look like a-zA-Z _0-9. For more option http://www.php.net/manual/en/reference.pcre.pattern.syntax.php. The character double quote " can not be included in the pattern as it is the character to delimit tags with space.
• **Only accept lowercase freetags** Each uppercase character are replaced by the lowercase character. Example: FreeMovie will become freemovie

Tag Management

Freetag 3D Browser Configuration

There is an admin screen, which currently only accepts configuration of the morcego browser for browsing the freetags.

To use the morcego 3D-Network-Browser, you'll have to activate the features:

• Morcego?
• Ajax

Perms

• tiki_p_view_freetags: to view tags
• tiki_p_freetags_tag: to add tags

More information

Alias

tag
tagging
freetag
freetags
free tag
free tags
Folksonomy
label
labels

Table of contents:

Table of contents:

Search

Help!
If you can't find results that you think should appear, first check the search mode.

Overview

If the search feature is enabled and you assign the search box module to the left or right side bar, you will see a search box where that you can use to search content in Tiki. The search box module will display a select box allowing you to search for something in a specific content:

- Entire site : sum of all fields below
- Wiki Pages : page name, description, data
- Directory : name, description
- Articles : title, heading, body
- Image Galleries : name, description
- Images : name, description
- File Galleries : name, description
• Files : name, description, search_data (data produced by the converter))
• Forums : forum posts title and content (name and description with tiki search)
• Blogs : title, description (and user with tiki search)
• Blog posts : title, data (and user with tiki search)
• FAQs : title, description
• FAQs questions : question, answer
• Comments : title, data (and summary for tiki search)

Once you select an option and click the search button you will be redirected to the searchresults page:

In this screen you will see a list of results for the search. The links below the title can be used to search in different areas of Tiki the same way as the search module does. If there are a lot of results you will see links to the next/prev pages at the bottom. The number of items where the search criteria was found can be located just below the links to search different features.

This integrated search engine is very useful to quick-find content or information in Tiki and it will automatically detect which features/sections are enabled or disabled allowing the search only in enabled features. If the Wiki is disabled, for example, you won't be able to find things in Wiki pages.

For more information

• Search General Settings
• Search Results

• Tiki:SearchDev

Table of contents:

Table of contents:

FAQs
Looking for the Tiki FAQs? They're located [here](#).

**Feature Overview**

Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs) date back to the earliest days of the internet, when usenet operators attempted to gather the answer to frequently asked questions in single place to cut down on traffic in the newsgroups. Tiki's FAQ feature allows you to group the questions by type and associate a FAQ with a Tiki Category. The FAQ administrator can also allow users to suggest questions that should be included in the FAQ. Items added in the FAQs are fully searchable by users (with `tiki_p_view_faqs` permission).

From Here
- FAQ User
- FAQ Admin

**Useful Links**

alias

- FAQs

---

**Directory**

The Directory is used to collect and display web site links categorized by topic for browsing by users. It is similar to the DMOZ Open Directory Project and Google’s Directory (see Useful Links, below).

The user can browse through categories, making use of category and link descriptions, and navigate to increasingly specific subcategories. A search form can also be used to locate a link in the Directory.

Users can submit links to be added to the Directory. The submitted links can be subject to validation by admins or designated editors before they are added.

Any number of categories can be created and each can be indicated as related to one or more other categories. Tiki tracks the addition of new links and the number of visits to each link, as well as the number of searches made. Users can also view "new sites" and "cool sites" (most-visited sites).
Directory information can also be displayed as modules in Tiki's side columns or wiki pages, and new Directory links can be reported in Tiki's Calendar.

**Feature Overview**

TikiWiki's Directory feature enables:

- Organization of Web site links into categories
- Searches for links
- Submission by users of link suggestions for approval by admins
- Appointment of editors to moderate specific categories
- Caching of linked Web sites to avoid the problem of dead links or temporarily unavailable servers
- Display of top-ranked sites in terms of hits
- Display of most recently added sites
- Indication of top-ranked and recently added sites in a Tiki module
- Association of Directory categories with one another and/or with one or more global Tiki Categories

**More Documentation**

- [Directory User](http://tiki.org) How to use the Directory once it has been activated and configured.
- [Directory Admin](http://tiki.org) How to activate and configure the Directory, including determining its organization and page display, and setting appropriate permissions.
- [Directory Details](http://tiki.org) Details on Directory internals, including information on related files, permissions, database tables and CSS selectors.
Useful Links
These are other examples of and information about Web directories.

- DMOZ Open Directory Project
  http://www.dmoz.org
- Google Directory
  http://directory.google.com/
- Wikipedia "Directory" entry

alias

- Directories

Administration

Installation
Read first Maps Install and then proceed to configuration.

Configuration

Maps Config configure the maps feature.
See also the Maps Mapfile Tutorial to understand mapfiles and how to create them.

Table of contents:

Copyright

Overview  Related Topics

- Bugs and Wishes
The Copyright Management System (or ©MS) is a way of licensing your content, typically under an open or free content license, such as the Gnu Free Documentation License or the Open Game License.

**To access**

Click the **Copywrite** icon on the Admin Panel or Access [http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=copyright](http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=copyright)

### Site Ads and Banner

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow viewing HTML mails?:</td>
<td>Enable HTML emails with this option</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum size for each attachment:</td>
<td>Select the maximum attachment size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include a flag by each e-mail to quickly flag/un-flag them?:</td>
<td>Enable easy selecting multiple mails for common actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

*The remaining content needs to be moved to the webmail section of the Tiki User or Administrator Guides and referenced back here*
Copyright Management User

The Copyright Management System (or ©MS) is a way of licensing your content, typically under an open or free content license, such as the Gnu Free Documentation License or the Open Game License. By switching this feature on you can define a content license for all your wiki content, associate copyright notices with individual pages and even display a full license for printing.

Also see
PluginCopyright

The Copyright Management System (©MS) allows you to specify a content license under which all wiki pages are published when submitted. When this feature is activated by an administrator, new form elements appear on the Wiki Edit Page:

This allows users submitting content to attach a copyright notice to the page. The user enters the title of work being copyright (which may or may not be different to the page title), the year of copyright and the author(s) associated with the content.

Normal users can only add copyright notices to a page, and only administrators can delete or modify submitted ones. Copyright notices can then be recalled using the Copyright Notice Plugin. This is normally only done in the license page. To view the license for a particular page click on the license link at the bottom of the page, for example:

This will take you the the license (in this case the OpenGameLicense) for that page. Depending on how the administrator has set-up the license you may also be able to peruse all the copyright pages for that page as well.

Similarly, clicking on the PrintIcon will now take you to a full print-out of your page content and the license under which it is published.

Editing Copyright Notices

The ©MS uses the permission tiki_p_edit_copyrights which allows users to access the copyrights edit page. To access the copyrights edit page for a particular page, go to the license page for that page and click on the link at the bottom of the page:

If you have permissions this will take you to the copyright edits page where you can edit the
This page allows administrators to alter the order of copyright notices, edit their data or add new copyright notices.

To edit a copyright notice simply alter the information in the text boxes and click the 'edit' button on the right-hand side.

To delete a copyright notice click on the 'x' on the right-hand side.

To move a copyright notice's order click on 'up' or 'down' on the right-hand side.

To add a new copyright notice simply fill in the information in the empty text boxes at the bottom of this page, as you would adding a copyright notice in the wiki edit page above, and click the 'add' button.

Useful Links

- Creative Commons
  http://creativecommons.org/
- GNU/FDL
  http://www.fsf.org/copyleft/fdl.html
- Open Game License
  http://www.opengamingfoundation.org/ogl.html
- Open Publication License
  http://opencontent.org/openpub/

---

Messages

Overview
The Messages function allows users to send internal messages to each other.

To access
Click the Messages icon on the Admin Panel
or

Related Topics
- Inter-User Messages
- Bugs and Wishes
### User Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Users accept internal messages by default:</td>
<td>Users default to accepting messages with this option</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users can opt-out of internal messages:</td>
<td>Users are allowed to block messages with this option</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum mailbox size (messages, 0=unlimited):</td>
<td>Maximum number of messages allowed in a users mailbox</td>
<td>0 (unlimited)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum mailbox archive size (messages, 0=unlimited):</td>
<td>Maximum number of messages allowed in a users archive mailbox</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum sent mailbox size (messages, 0=unlimited):</td>
<td>Maximum number of messages allowed in a users sent mailbox</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show user's real name instead of login in autocomplete selector in messaging feature:</td>
<td>Show user's real rather than login name if enabled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Webmail

Overview
The Webmail function provides a webmail service for users if enabled.

To access
Click the Webmail icon on the Admin Panel or access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=webmail

No Tabs

6.x

Site Ads and Banner

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow viewing HTML mails?</td>
<td>Enable HTML emails with this option</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum size for each attachment:</td>
<td>Select the maximum attachment size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include a flag by each e-mail to quickly</td>
<td>Enable easy selecting multiple mails for common</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flag/un-flag them?:</td>
<td>actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
The remaining content needs to be moved to the webmail section of the Tiki User or Administrator Guides and referenced back here
Webmail

The webmail feature can be used to offer a web-based interface to your users webmail accounts, note that Tiki is not a mail server, your users should already have email addresses before being able to use webmail. Any POP3 accessible mail account can be used from Tiki.

Starting in Tiki4, Webmail feature allows using imap, even with ssl, and smtp configuration, as well as using it in conjunction with the new Groupmail feature.

Configuring webmail accounts

After enabling webmail from the features section of the admin panel you will be able to enter the webmail section from the application menu. In your first visit to the webmail you will be automatically redirected to the webmail configuration panel.

In this panel you can configure as many webmail accounts as you want, you also have to select the account that you want to use by clicking its name. Note that the current webmail account will be displayed in bold text. The information you need to setup a webmail account is very similar to the information you need for other mail clients such as Outlook express so the user will be familiarized with the settings.

Reading emails

The mailbox icon will take you to the INBOX of your current mail account. In this screen you will be able to see your emails, read them and manipulate them:
Mails that you already read are displayed in a different background than unread emails. You can select some emails using checkboxes and delete them, mark them for followup or mark them as read/unread. You can use filters to display only unread mails or only flagged emails.

## Writing emails

The compose icon let's you compose an email and send it using your SMTP configuration. The screen will be the following:

*insert graphic*

Note that you can use addresses from your address book by clicking the "to", "cc" or "bcc" links in the compose email screen.

*insert graphic*

You can attach up to three files to an email each attachment will have a maximum size that admin can configure. If your email server has limitations about email attachment size you should observe them since Tiki cannot override them.

*insert graphic*

You can send HTML email using Tiki just write the tags in the email using `<b>`, `<i>` and so...

Managing contacts Whenever an email is sent Tiki will check the addresses and if they are not in your address book will offer you to add the addresses to your address book.

*insert graphic*

The address book can be managed clicking on the contacts icon in the webmail screen. You can assign a nickname to an address and use it when sending an email, Tiki will automatically replace the nickname with the email address when it can.

*insert graphic*

## Links

- [Groupmail](http://tiki.org)
The Wysiwyg (What you see is what you get) feature provides a user friendly editing alternative to the WIKI syntax editor.

To access

Click the **Wysiwyg** icon on the [Admin Panel](http://tiki.org) or


Note

*Tiki now uses CKEditor, whilst versions previous to 6.0 used FCKeditor*

No Tabs

6.x

Search Engine Friendly URL
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wysiwyg Editor Features</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wysiwyg Editor is optional:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature allows users to switch between WIKI and Wysiwyg editors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wysiwyg Editor is displayed by default:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature selects the Wysiwyg editor as the default</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reopen with the same editor:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature ensures the editor last used to edit a page or item is used for the next edit as the default</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content is parsed like a wiki page:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature ensures pages and items created using the Wysiwyg editor would also include Wiki parsing for plugins and inline character styles (but see next option)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content is partially wiki parsed:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature ensures pages and items created using the Wysiwyg editor would also include Wiki parsing for plugins BUT NOT some other wiki syntax such as inline character styles (above option must be enabled)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Wiki syntax in WYSIWYG:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature is experimental in 6.x. Wiki syntax can also be used when using Wysiwyg editor, but the handy Plugin Editor then only works in Wysiwyg Source mode (note: Ajax auto-save must be enabled if using this feature)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wysiwyg editor skin:</td>
<td>Select your preferred Wysiwyg Editor Skin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font names:</td>
<td>List of Font Names - note: must be separated by the ; (semi-colon character)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Related Features</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiki paragraph formatting:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature affects whether multiple lines appear as a paragraph or not</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But still create line breaks within paragraphs:</td>
<td>When Wiki paragraph formatting is enabled, this option creates line breaks within paragraphs</td>
<td>enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajax:</td>
<td>Enabling Ajax allows page updates without having the Tiki site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 268
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ajax auto-save:</td>
<td>Enabling this feature allows the Wiki service to automatically save edits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>having to perform a browser refresh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The following information will be moved to the Tiki User and Administrator Guides

---

**Wysiwyg Editor**

If enabled at Admin > Features, editing wiki pages can be achieved in a visual manner, thanks to an integrated FCKeditor (http://www.fckeditor.net), from Tikiwiki version 1.10 onwards, or CKEditor from Tiki6 onwards. This means that information can be copied and pasted from a word processing program (or web page, etc.) right into the wiki page keeping most (if not all) the markup of your document.

---

**Site Ads and Bannders**

**Overview**

Banners are a common way to display advertisements and notices on a Web page

**To access**

Click the **Site Ads and Banners** icon on the Admin Panel or Access [http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=ads](http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=ads)

**Related Topics**

- Banner Administration
- PluginBanner
- Bugs and Wishes
Site Ads and Banner

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Ads and Banners Content:</td>
<td>Define the banner zone here (Banners must be assigned to a Zone, which is essentially a label). For example <code>{banner zone=&quot;TopHeader&quot;}</code> to create a zone called TopHeader. See <a href="http://tiki.org">Banner Administration</a> for more details.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate:</td>
<td>Make the Banner visible to Admin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publish:</td>
<td>Make the Banner visible to all site visitors (note Activate must be turned on for Publish to take effect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Intertiki**

**Overview**
The Intertiki feature allows different Tikis to communicate user data with each other.

**Related Topics**

- [Bugs and Wishes](http://tiki.org)
To access

Click the **Intertiki** icon on the [Admin Panel](http://tiki.org) or


**Tabs**

This page contains the following tabs:

- **Intertiki Client**
- **Intertiki Server**

**Note**

*The information below pertains to using and administering the Intertiki feature. Eventually it will be moved to the new User and Administrator Guides*

---

[needs review](http://tiki.org) made major changes to descriptive text, added section for explaining Intertiki fields in detail and mentioned dependency on Log-In authentication type on clients

**Table of contents**

- Tiki Reference Guide
- General Administration
- General Preferences tab
- General Settings tab
- Navigation tab
- Date and Time tab
  - Date and Time Formats
- Change Admin Password tab
- Features Admin
- Global Features
- Interface
- Programmer
- New
- Experimental
  - Related
- Alias
- Login Administration page
- General Preferences
• Case Sensitivity
• Remember Me
• Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity
• CustomFields
• LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4
  • Changes
  • How it works
    • Group membership and permissions
    • How anonymous binding works
  • Settings
    • How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use
    • How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki
• Examples
  • Unix
  • Active Directory
  • Zimbra LDAP
• Debugging
• Common Problems and Workarounds
  • Certificate Problems
• LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X
  • LDAP §4d9a8a5b266536ef45aee318486af674§ General Settings Overview
  • LDAP §6013814ea94deff52f678ac3c4682a78§ Troubleshooting
• LDAP Authentication tab
• Aliases
  • AuthPAM
    • Admin Documentation
    • Requirements for AuthPAM
    • Permissions!
    • Security Issues
• PAM Authentication tab
• Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
• Intro
  • Mod phpcas
• Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
• Install
• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration
    • phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options
• Community Administration
• User Features tab
• Community General Settings Tab
  • General Description
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Typical Uses
• Friendship Network tab
• Admin Profiles Page
  • For more information
• Alias
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
• Apply Profiles tab
• Profiles Advanced tab
• Look & Feel
• Alias
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
    • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
• Theme tab
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
• Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
  • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
• General Layout Options tab
• Shadow Layer tab
• Pagination Links tab
• UI Effects tab
• Custom CSS tab
• Miscellaneous tab
• Internationalization (i18n)
  • Overview
• Babelfish Links
• Customized String Translation tab
  • Feature Modules
  • User's Configuration Modules
  • Navigation Modules
  • Recent Changes Modules
  • "Best of" Modules
  • Help and Support Modules
  • Search Modules
  • MyTiki Modules
  • Miscellaneous Modules
• Modules
  • Modules vs. Plugins
  • Related pages
• Tiki Modules
  • More information,
• Meta Tags Config
• Meta Tags Configuration page
• Performance Admin page
• Performance Tab
• Bytecode Cache Tab
• Wiki tab
• Database tab
• Memcache tab
• Plugins tab
• Major Slowdown tab
• Sessions tab
  • General Security
  • Spam Protection
  • Search Results
  • Site Access
  • Tokens
  • Clipperz Online Password Management
• Security Administration
• Prevent automatic/robot registration
• Spam Protection tab
• Clipperz online password manager
• Comments Admin page
• Comments
• Alias
• Feeds Admin page
• Feeds
  • Overview
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Setting up feeds
  • More information
  • Alias
• Feeds General Preferences tab
• Feeds
• Connect page
• Advanced Ratings page
• Wiki Admin page
  • Dumps
• Wiki General Preferences tab
• Wiki Features tab
• Wiki Page Staging and Approval
  • Admin preferences and setup
  • Sample use case
    • Features that will be apparent
    • Important notes about creating new pages
    • Important admin notes
• Limitations
• Profile
• File Galleries
  • Key features
  • File Gallery improvements in Tiki6
  • File Gallery improvements in Tiki5
  • File Gallery improvements in Tiki3
  • From Here
  • Alias
  • See Also
• Blogs
  • Feature Overview
  • About Trackback
  • About XMLRPC
  • Blog Revamp
• Image Galleries
  • Feature Overview
• Articles
• **Feature Overview**
  • Topics
  • Article Types
• Alias
• **Forums**
• Feature Overview
• **Trackers (Overview)**
  • What are Trackers?
  • Related Pages
  • Four Steps to make a Tracker
  • What can Trackers be used for?
  • Demos of Trackers used for production
  • Related links
  • Profiles
  • Alias
• **Polls**
  • Related Pages
  • Using Polls
    • Polls as a Plugin
    • Polls as a Side Module
    • Permissions
    • Polls and Anonymous
• Poll templates
• Calendar
• **New in version 2 and version 3**
• General
  • Example
• Categories
  • Category Permissions
• **Score**
  • How scoring works
  • How stars work
  • Typical Uses
  • Related pages
• **Tags**
  • What can I tag within Tiki?
  • Modules
  • User
  • Admin
    • Freetag Browsing
    • Tag Management
    • Freetag 3D Browser Configuration
• Perms
• Alias
• **Search**
Introduction
The **Intertiki** feature allows Tikis to communicate user data with each other. It's based on xmlrpc protocol (thus, you need xmlrpc feature enabled in your Tiki, which can be set in the tiki wiki features control). It can be extended to several applications if those applications can communicate via XMLRPC. It was introduced in Tiki branch 1.9 to allow cross site authentication in all the tikiwiki.org subdomains.

**Assumptions:**

- The client IP must be fixed to have this feature working
- As of Tiki 3.0, the InterTiki master must not exist behind an Apache authorization barrier. ([htpasswd](http://tiki.org))
- As of Tiki 3.0, the InterTiki Master must not use the Web authorization method.

**Key Function and sub-features**

Interiki's primary design is meant to achieve master-slave authentication relationships between multiple Tiki sites. It's designed to allow several satellite sites authenticate against one central source for user data.

Additionally Intertiki can be used to transfer user profiles from the primary user source and their corresponding groups. Both of these choices are configurable and allow for a wide range of authentication and user data share paradigms.

Intertiki can be extended for several other purposes with additional custom development utilizing XMLRPC's ability to query just about any asset of user data in a tiki.
Configuration example

In order to enable Intertiki for proper configuration, four key steps are required:

1. Enable "Intertiki" in the TikiWiki feature controls on both the master and slave(s)
2. Enable "XMLRPC" in the TikiWiki feature controls on both the master and slave(s)
3. On the "client" Tiki (the Tiki that will be requesting to authenticate against a master) change the "Authentication Method" to "Web Server" in the Log-in feature page.
4. Configure the server and client(s) based on the example information below making changes for your deployment where necessary.

Explanation of fields

Server Setup

On the machine you will configure to be the primary authentication server (a Master that other Tiki's will request user data from) these are the fields that matter on the Intertiki feature page:

- **Intertiki Server Enabled**: Check this to make this machine an Intertiki Server
- **Intertiki shared cookie for sliding auth under same domain**: When enabled a user who logs into or out of any site(slaves or master) is automatically logged into or out of all other sites. (feature rememberme must be on)
• **Access Log File**: location, from your tiki root dir, where you want the access log file stored.
  - a few examples here would be nice. Does this path start with "/" or not. Is it a URL or a direct path to a file from the root of the server?
• **Error Log File**: location, from your tiki root dir, where you want the error log file stored

The table after allows you to define multiple clients. Only clients on this list will be allowed to make requests against the server. This is useful, and necessary, security feature:

• **Name**: Arbitrary name used to uniquely identify this configuration (does not effect operation). Recommend use of a name that indicates the client server (ex: doc.tw.o)
• **Key**: This is the shared key you define. It has to match the client configuration for your server. It can be as short or as long as you like. It is recommended you follow the same kind of password policies your organization would have for something like a wireless WEP key.
• **IP**: The physical IP address the client machine will be making requests to the server from. *If the client is on the same machine, you should be able to use 127.0.0.1*
• **Contact**: username of primary contact on client machine. Useful for adminstration
Client Setup

**IMPORTANT:** On your client machine (machine that will request auth from the master server) you MUST have set the Authentication Type to "Web Server" on the Log In admin control page or Intertiki will not work.

*In Tiki 3.0, it is useful to start by first entering the InterTiki Server fields first.*

The InterTiki Server fields are for defining for every master server you want to have access to from this client

- **Name:** Set the name of your target server as defined in the server name field of the master. Use a distinct, but easily understood value.
- **host:** The full URL of the master servers primary Tiki (ex: http://www.tikiwiki.org).
  - Note, even if your Tiki is not at the top level of your web directory, you will still use the site's URL per the ex. above.
- **port:** The port number the master tikiwiki responds to HTTP on (usually 80).
  - Note: as of Tiki 3.0, HTTP is the assumed method for XML_RPC interchange.
- **path:** the full path (from the URL root) to the PHP file containing the XMLRPC handler on the server
  - EX 1: If the master tiki resides at the root of the site, you would enter "/remote.php"
  - EX 2: Say the master tiki is found at http://www.mydomain.com/tiki/mytiki, you would enter "/tiki/mytiki/remote.php" in this field.
- **Groups:** Groups on the master to authenticate to (only auth users in the groups defined, case-sensitive).
  - *is this required, or can it be blank?*
Click SAVE and then proceed to the upper-half of the InterTiki Client setup screen

- **Tiki Unique Key**: This must match the shared key entered in the Master's key field.
- **xxxxx As Master**: Use the drop down list to select the master server you just setup.
- **Import User Preferences**: Check this box if you want your client Tiki to copy the user preferences from the master server (NOTE: This will overwrite local user preferences every time the user logs in)
- **Import User Groups**: Check this box if you want the groups the user belongs to on the master server to be imported (along with their security definitions). NOTE: This will overwrite local groups every time a user logs in.
- **Limit Group Import**: A comma separated list of case-sensitive group names. This list will limit the group import feature to only those groups listed here.
- **Intertiki shared cookie for sliding auth under same domain**: When enabled a user who logs into or out of any site(slaves or master) is automatically logged into or out of all other sites. (feature rememberme must be on).

**Pictoral Examples**

You can see below an example of two Tiki clients ([doc.tikiwiki.org](http://doc.tikiwiki.org), [edu.tikiwiki.org](http://edu.tikiwiki.org)) configuration using Intertiki against [tikiwiki.org](http://tikiwiki.org) as a master server.

**Intertiki client 1: doc.tikiwiki.org**


**Intertiki client 2: edu.tikiwiki.org**


**Intertiki Server: tikiwiki.org**


Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware ([http://tiki.org](http://tiki.org)), Page 282
Hosting example

Please find below an example of successful setup at a hosting environment (siteground)

gezzaz notes:

• the setup below is not so much different than above but I was struggling a while to get it right, so I decided to share it. I was stuck with error message saying that the key is not valid but it was entered correctly >> I think I got this error because changing the key on the master side is not performed correctly. You will get the above error if you decide to change your key on the master and make a save. So you have to delete the whole config row on the master and enter the values again if you wish to make changes. On the client side you can change the key without removing the old entry, it got updated for me
• Please interpret mydomain.com to your domain name

Starting ground:

• main domain called "mydomain.com" - this is the master
• a subdomain called "sub.mydomain.com" (defined using Cpanel's Subdomain maintenance feature) - this will be the client
• tiki for mydomain.com is installed in the www root folder (public_html/)
• tiki for sub.mydomain.com is installed in the "subdomain" subfolder of the www root (public_html/subdomain/)
• at master tiki XMLRPC API and Intertiki features are enabled
• at client tiki XMLRPC API and Intertiki features are enabled, at Login feature Authentication method option is set to Web Server

MASTER settings

Name         mydomain.com

Key          you choose, for example: 123456789abcdefghijklm

IP            the IP address of the server where mydomain.com resides (just ping mydomain.com and you will know)

Contact      enter your name or whatever you like, not important

CLIENT settings
(define this first)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>mydomain.com</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td><a href="http://www.mydomain.com">http://www.mydomain.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path</td>
<td>/remote.php</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**InterTiki Client section**

(select this after server is defined)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tiki Unique key</th>
<th>as defined at the master, in this example 123456789abcdefghijklm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InterTiki Slave mode</td>
<td>mydomain.com as master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import user preferences</td>
<td>checked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import user groups</td>
<td>checked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit group import</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intertiki internal details**

Get version : intertiki:get_version

Used for debugging at this time. Future plans include the ability to limit requests based on a minimally defined TikiWiki version.
Remote login : intertiki.validate

This enables the ability to use a tiki account created on one tiki, at another tiki. One tiki is server, the other is client (client will authenticate against the server). The server has to identify a url where the xmlrpc requests can be reached. The client uses that url to reach server and send xmlrpc requests. (Typically this is: http://yourtiki/remote.php, as the XMLRPC server handler code is located in the remote.php file in your tiki root directory).

The idea is to avoid creating a local account such remote logins. At this time, a local account is automatically created on the client Tiki when a client successfully authenticates against an Intertiki master server if that account does not already exist. Intertiki clients support the use of the @ as a delimiter for specifying the 'realm' the login belongs to when a user is logging in. This feature is primarily useful if a client Tiki can authenticate against more than one master tiki allowing for complex Intertiki relationships between Tiki sites. Some changes are made here and there to avoid a new client login containing a @ access certain features (like preferences and such).

Upon successful login from a remote intertiki server, the client will log the user into the local client Tiki. If the options are chosen it will also transfer the users preferences and group security settings from the master Interiki server.

Each validation request also sends a hash key that sort of identifies the client server. Eventually the use of that key will be optional. However a good security practice will be to keep it in place, especially if your Tiki is publicly available on the web.
Future enhancements

In the login box a new menu is proposed with that when enabled via login features will list the possible master auth locations, either local or remote. The user could also type login@remote directly it will be processed correctly.

Trouble shooting

- check the IP is the right one by checking the tiki Logs
- check that the error log and the access log are writeable by the server
- if your client does not have a static IP and you need to specify an IP range in the server settings check out a temp fix here: http://dev.tikiwiki.org/tiki-view_tracker_item.php?itemId=1878

Related Links

- http://www.xmlrpc.com/
- http://phpxmlrpc.sourceforge.net/ (on which is based the xmlrpc pear lib used in tiki)
- http://tikiwiki.org/InterTiki
- TRIM to manage many TikiWikis!

alias

- Intertiki Config

Intertiki Client tab

Overview

Related Topics

- reference
Set up Intertiki Client (Slave) Sites using this tab

To Access
From the [Intertiki](http://tiki.org) page, click the **Intertiki client** tab.

**Note**

*set up the Intertike Master using the associated Intertiki server tab*

---

**No Tabs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intertiki Client Tab</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiki Unique Key</td>
<td>This field must match the shared key entered in the Master's key field for this server.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InterTiki Slave Mode:</td>
<td>Select Yes to enable Slave Mode, where the Master (Intertiki Server) takes over user authentication.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Add new server**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td>Set the name (label) to use for your target server as defined in the server name field of the master.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host:</td>
<td>The full URL of the master servers primary Tiki (ex: <a href="http://www.tikiwiki.org">http://www.tikiwiki.org</a>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port:</td>
<td>The port number the master tikiwiki responds to HTTP on (usually 80)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Intertiki Server tab

**Overview**
Set up Intertiki Server (Master) Sites using this tab

**To Access**
From the Intertiki page, click the Intertiki server tab.

**Note**
*set up the Intertiki Slave using the associated Intertiki client tab*

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Path</td>
<td>the full path (from the URL root) to the PHP file containing the XMLRPC handler on the server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups</td>
<td>Groups on the master to authenticate to (only auth users in the groups defined, case-sensitive)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Intertiki Server Tab**

Intertiki shared cookie for sliding auth under same domain:

When enabled a user who logs into or out of any site (slaves or master) is automatically logged into or out of all other sites. (note: feature rememberme must be enabled).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access Log file:</td>
<td>Name of file where you want Access Logs to be stored</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors Log file:</td>
<td>Name of file where you want Error Logs to be stored</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Known Hosts (New):</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td>Set the name (label) to use for your client (Slave) server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key:</td>
<td>This field must match the shared key entered in the Client's</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Slave) key field for this server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP:</td>
<td>IP address of the Client (Slave) server. If unsure Ping it by</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>domain name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact:</td>
<td>Not used by Tiki, but enter any information which might be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>valuable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Webservice Registration

**Overview**

With this feature you can pull data from any JSON or SOAP enabled service, for example from Yahoo:

**Related Topics**

- Webservice Plugin
- Bugs and Wishes

**To access**

Click the **Webservice Registration** icon on the Admin Panel

or


**Note**

*This feature is managed using the Webservice Plugin*
Search Engine Friendly URL

Overview

This feature shortens and simplifies URLs, which make them both more friendly for users and for search engines.

Related Topics

- Bugs and Wishes

To access

Click the SEFURL icon on the Admin Panel or Access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=sefurl

Note

Search Engine Friendly URLs will not work unless the .htaccess file is enabled. Instructions for enabling .htaccess
Search Engine Friendly URL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search engine friendly url</td>
<td>Enable this feature - Note: set the <em>prevent special characters in page names</em> setting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search engine friendly url Postfilter:</td>
<td>Do not enable this feature as most Tiki features output friendly URLs and this feature has high processor overhead&quot; setting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Url Parameters that should go in the path:</td>
<td>Additional parameters such as country or language can go here. The instructions are on the <a href="http://tiki.org">Clean URLs page</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display article title in the sefurl:</td>
<td>The Article Title rather than Article number can be used in the sefurl. The instructions are on the <a href="http://tiki.org">Clean URLs page</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display blog title in the sefurl:</td>
<td>The Blog Title rather than Article number can be used in the sefurl. The instructions are on the <a href="http://tiki.org">Clean URLs page</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect tiki-view_tracker.php?itemId=yyy to Prefixyyy page:</td>
<td>This feature uses the <a href="http://tiki.org">Wiki Prefix Alias Feature</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Video

Overview
Information here

To access
Click the Video icon on the Admin Panel or

Tabs
This page contains the following tabs:
• Kaltura
• Ustream Watershed

Kaltura tab

Overview
information

To Access
From the Video page, click the Kaltura tab.

Note
if applicable

No Tabs
6.x4.x

Related Topics
• Bugs and Wishes

Related Topics
• reference
### Kaltura Reference Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activate the Feature</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaltura</td>
<td>Activate Kaltura Video</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaltura/Tiki Config</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaltura User:</td>
<td>Your Kaltura User Name - you could use your host name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaltura Service URL:</td>
<td>URL of the Kaltura Service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaltura Partner Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partner ID:</td>
<td>Your Partner Settings ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User secret:</td>
<td>Kaltura User Secret</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin secret:</td>
<td>Kaltura Admin Secret</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaltura Dynamic Player</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDP UI Configuration ID:</td>
<td>Kaltura Dynamic Player User Interface ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDP Widget ID:</td>
<td>Kaltura Dynamic Player Widget ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaltura Contribution Wizard</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KCW UI Configuration ID:</td>
<td>Kaltura Configuration Wizard ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaltura Simple Editor UI Config</td>
<td>Kaltura Simple Remix Editor UI Configuration ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaltura Advanced Editor UI</td>
<td>Kaltura Simple Remix Editor UI Configuration ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration ID:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fieldset or section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kaltura Video Editing**

Kaltura Video Editing through Kaltura is a new feature in Tiki4. You need a Kaltura account to use Kaltura online services this feature in Tiki or use The Kaltura community edition.

Tiki6 is tested with Kaltura CE 2.0 and Kaltura hosted services.

**Goal:** To bring a wiki approach to video within the Tiki framework.

Implementation:
- Kaltura Contribution Wizard to upload media (audio, video, image) under a user.
- Kaltura Advance Editor/ Kaltura Simple Editor to create/edit/remix user uploaded media.
- A gallery list of all the media, remix videos of a user.
- Wikiplugin to include a Kaltura video on a wiki page.
- View and edit an information about a user's Kaltura entry.
1. Setting up a Kaltura account in Tiki

To enable and Configure Kaltura, go to Admin Home > Features > New (tab) > Kaltura and complete the configuration parameters, which are described below:

Parameters for Kaltura in Tiki Admin panel

**Kaltura Partner**
A person or an organization with an account on the Kaltura system. Commonly, it is possible to become a Kaltura Partner either by manually signing up, or by registering to Kaltura during the installation process of a Kaltura application. Kaltura Partner ID is a numeric identifier, uniquely identifying one Kaltura Partner within the Kaltura database. On registering for a Kaltura Partner account, you will get e-mail from Kaltura with the following information.

- **Partner ID**: This is your Partner Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki.
- **Sub-Partner ID**:
- **Administrator Email**:
- **Administrator Password**:
- **Web Service Admin-Secret**: This is your Admin Secret in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki.
- **Web Service Secret**: This is your User Secret in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki.

**KCW**
Kaltura Contributor Wizard, Kaltura widget for content ingestion; a flash wizard that provide an easy to use, friendly, and customizable user interface for uploading and importing media and content. The CW can be configured using an xml configuration file. The CW configuration file defines different customization aspects:

- **List of media providers** (e.g. file upload, webcam, import from different sources) available to the user.
- **Graphical skinning and locale** of the different parts of the wizard.
- **Parameters** defining the behavior of the wizard such as the default media provider.

The xml configuration files can created and stored on kaltura server through kaltura api Test Console. The stored xml configuration is identified by an id. The id of the desired configuration should be set as KCW UI Configuration Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki which is by default 36200. You can contact Kaltura for more customization. [More Info]

**KDP**
Kaltura Dynamic Player, a highly flexible movie player. In order to embed a KDP on a web
page a developer should first create a widget or use one of the available widgets which describes the settings of the required player. Every Kaltura partner is provided with a default widget identified by _{PartnerId} (For example, _201). KDP can be configured using an xml configuration file. The configuration file defines the graphical layout and functionality of the different parts of the player. The xml configuration files can be created and stored on kaltura server through kaltura api Test Console or through an UI wizard in the Kaltura Management Console. The id of the desired configuration should be set as KDP UI Configuration Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki which is by default 48411. More Info

**KSE/KAE**

Kaltura Standard Editor and Kaltura Advanced Editor are customizable flash video editor enabling end users to mash up videos and images, add audio tracks and enrich their video mix with transitions. These editor offers a robust set of features in an intuitive and easy to use interface. The Kaltura Advanced Editor offers the most comprehensive set of tools available today for online video editing. The editor can be configured using an XML configuration file. The configuration file defines different customization aspects:

- Graphical skinning and locale of the different parts of the editor.
- Configuration id for the Kaltura Contributor Wizard (KCW) used to add more media.

The xml configuration files can created and stored on Kaltura server through kaltura api Test Console. The stored xml configuration is identified by an id. The ids of the desired configurations should be set for KSE UI Configuration Id and KAE UI Configuration Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki which are by default 36300(KSE) and 1000865(KAE). You can contact Kaltura for more customization. More Info

Below is a screenshot of the admin configuration page for Kaltura:

![Admin Configuration Page](image_url)

**2. Using Kaltura feature in Tiki**

To embed a Kaltura media or mix into a wiki page, use Tiki wikiplugin syntax
Wikiplugin Kaltura

{kaltura id="entry id"}

For more information, visit:

- Kaltura CE
- development info: Kaltura
- project site: http://tv.tiki.org
- http://www.kaltura.org/project/tikiwiki-kaltura
- http://www.crunchbase.com/company/kaltura

Aliases
Video Editing | Collaborative Video Editing | Wiki Video Editing | Video | Kaltura Video

Ustream Watershed tab

Overview
Ustream Watershed Webcasting Platform

To Access
From the Video page, click the Ustream Watershed tab.

No Tabs
6.x
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activate the feature</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ustream Watershed:</td>
<td>Activate this feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Errors to Tiki log</td>
<td>Capture Ustream Errors to the Tiki log</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Basic tracker settings**

- **Tracker ID of Channel tracker:** One tracker is required per Channel, this is where the TrackerId goes.
- **Field ID of BrandId:** The Watershed BrandId should go into the Channel tracker as a text field, enter the FieldId number here.
- **Field ID of ChannelCode:** The Watershed ChannelCode should go into the Channel tracker as a text field, enter the FieldId number here.

**Archive settings**

- **Tracker ID of Archive tracker:** A tracker is required to store Archive information.
- **Field ID of videoid:** Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed videoid is stored.
- **Field ID of BrandId for Archive:** Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed BrandId is stored.
- **Field ID of ChannelCode for Archive:** Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed ChannelCode is stored.
- **Field ID of rtmpURL for Archive (url field type):** Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed rtmpURL is stored. Note tracker field type must be a URL.
- **Field ID of fivURL for Archive (url field type):** Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed fivURL is stored. Note tracker field type must be a URL.

**Archive settings (optional)**

- **Field ID of Date string for Archive:** Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the date of recording is stored.
- **Field ID of Duration for Archive:** Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the duration of recording is stored.
- **Field ID of Filesize for Archive:** Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the file size of recording is stored.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field ID of Title for Archive:</td>
<td>Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the title of the recording is stored</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field ID of Description for Archive:</td>
<td>Tracker FieldId number for the textarea field where the description of the recording is stored</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field ID of Tags for Archive:</td>
<td>Tracker FieldId number for the freetags field where freetags of the recording are stored</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Flash Media Encoder**

- Flash Media Encoder shared secret: Enter shared secret here, note required only if Flash Media Encoding is used
- Log Errors to Tiki log: Capture Ustream Errors to the Tiki log~

**Ustream Watershed**

Integration to Ustream Watershed live video streaming.

See also: PluginWatershed

https://watershed.ustream.tv/
http://tikiwiki.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/tikiwiki?view=revision&revision=27711
http://tikiwiki.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/tikiwiki?view=revision&revision=27708

alias

- Ustream
- Watershed
Social networks

Overview
This feature integrates popular social networks (such as Twitter or Facebook) into Tiki.

To access
Click the Social Networks icon on the Admin Panel or Access http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=social

No Tabs
6.x

Social Networks tab
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Social Networks</td>
<td>Activate Social Networking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer key</td>
<td>Twitter Site Consumer Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer secret</td>
<td>Twitter Site Consumer Secret</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API key:</td>
<td>Facebook Site API key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application secret:</td>
<td>Facebook Site Application secret</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application ID:</td>
<td>Facebook Site Application ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit.ly Login:</td>
<td>bit.ly Site Consumer Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit.ly Key:</td>
<td>bit.ly Site Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use site-wide account:</td>
<td>Use bit.ly URIs for all URI communications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- [Tiki Reference Guide](http://tiki.org)
- [General Administration](http://tiki.org)
- [General Preferences tab](http://tiki.org)
- [General Settings tab](http://tiki.org)
- [Navigation tab](http://tiki.org)
- [Date and Time tab](http://tiki.org)
  - [Date and Time Formats](http://tiki.org)
- [Change Admin Password tab](http://tiki.org)
- [Features Admin](http://tiki.org)
- [Global Features](http://tiki.org)
- [Interface](http://tiki.org)
- [Programmer](http://tiki.org)
- [New](http://tiki.org)
- [Experimental](http://tiki.org)
  - [Related](http://tiki.org)
- [Alias](http://tiki.org)
- [Login Administration page](http://tiki.org)
- [General Preferences](http://tiki.org)
  - [Case Sensitivity](http://tiki.org)
• Remember Me
• Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity
• CustomFields
• LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4
  • Changes
  • How it works
    • Group membership and permissions
    • How anonymous binding works
  • Settings
    • How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use
    • How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki
• Examples
  • Unix
  • Active Directory
  • Zimbra LDAP
• Debugging
• Common Problems and Workarounds
  • Certificate Problems
• LDAP Authentication tab
• Aliases
  • AuthPAM
    • Admin Documentation
    • Requirements for AuthPAM
    • Permissions!
    • Security Issues
• PAM Authentication tab
  • Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki
  • Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth
• Intro
  • Mod phpcas
• Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)
  • Install
• CAS Authentication tab
  • Requirements for phpBB Authentication
  • Enabling phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication
    • phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration
    • phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options
• Community Administration
• User Features tab
• Community General Settings Tab
  • General Description
• Key Function and sub-features
• Typical Uses
• Friendship Network tab
• Admin Profiles Page
  • For more information
• Alias
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
  • Requirements
  • Details of Supported Profiles
    • Tiki 3.x
• Apply Profiles tab
• Profiles Advanced tab
• Look & Feel
• Alias
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
    • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
• Theme tab
  • Key Function and sub-features
  • Examples
    • Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.
    • And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo
• General Layout Options tab
• Shadow Layer tab
• Pagination Links tab
• UI Effects tab
• Custom CSS tab
• Miscellaneous tab
• Internationalization (i18n)
  • Overview
• Babelfish Links
• Customized String Translation tab
  • Feature Modules
  • User's Configuration Modules
  • Navigation Modules
  • Recent Changes Modules
  • "Best of" Modules
  • Help and Support Modules
  • Search Modules
  • MyTiki Modules
  • Miscellaneous Modules
• Modules
- Modules vs. Plugins
- Related pages
- Tiki Modules
  - More information
- Meta Tags Config
- Meta Tags Configuration page
- Performance Admin page
- Performance Tab
- Bytecode Cache Tab
- Wiki tab
- Database tab
- Memcache tab
- Plugins tab
- Major Slowdown tab
- Sessions tab
  - General Security
  - Spam Protection
  - Search Results
  - Site Access
  - Tokens
  - Clipperz Online Password Management
- Security Administration
  - Prevent automatic/robot registration
- Spam Protection tab
- Clipperz online password manager
- Comments Admin page
- Comments
- Alias
- Feeds Admin page
- Feeds
  - Overview
  - Key Function and sub-features
  - Setting up feeds
  - More information
  - Alias
- Feeds General Preferences tab
- Feeds
- Connect page
- Advanced Ratings page
- Wiki Admin page
  - Dumps
- Wiki General Preferences tab
- Wiki Features tab
- Wiki Page Staging and Approval
  - Admin preferences and setup
- Sample use case
  - Features that will be apparent
  - Important notes about creating new pages
  - Important admin notes
- Limitations
- Profile
- File Galleries
  - Key features
  - File Gallery improvements in Tiki6
  - File Gallery improvements in Tiki5
  - File Gallery improvements in Tiki3
  - From Here
  - Alias
  - See Also
- Blogs
  - Feature Overview
  - About Trackback
  - About XMLRPC
  - Blog Revamp
- Image Galleries
  - Feature Overview
- Articles
  - Feature Overview
    - Topics
    - Article Types
  - Alias
- Forums
  - Feature Overview
- Trackers (Overview)
  - What are Trackers?
  - Related Pages
  - Four Steps to make a Tracker
  - What can Trackers be used for?
  - Demos of Trackers used for production
  - Related links
  - Profiles
  - Alias
- Polls
  - Related Pages
  - Using Polls
    - Polls as a Plugin
    - Polls as a Side Module
    - Permissions
    - Polls and Anonymous
- Poll templates
• Calendar
• New in version 2 and version 3
• General
  • Example
• Categories
  • Category Permissions
• Score
  • How scoring works
  • How stars work
  • Typical Uses
  • Related pages
• Tags
  • What can I tag within Tiki?
  • Modules
  • User
  • Admin
    • Freetag Browsing
    • Tag Management
    • Freetag 3D Browser Configuration
  • Perms
  • Alias
• Search
• Overview
• FAQs
  • Feature Overview
• Directory
  • Feature Overview
• Administration
  • Installation
  • Configuration
• Copyright
• Copyright Management User
  • Editing Copyright Notices
• Messages
• Webmail
  • Configuring webmail accounts
  • Reading emails
  • Writing emails
• WYSIWYG
• Wysiwyg Editor
• Site Ads and Bannders
• Intertiki
• Introduction
  • Assumptions:
Tiki Reference Guide

- Key Function and sub-features
- Configuration example
  - Explanation of fields
    - Server Setup
    - Client Setup
  - Pictoral Examples
    - Intertiki client 1: doc.tikiwiki.org
    - Intertiki client 2: edu.tikiwiki.org
    - Intertiki Server: tikiwiki.org
- Hosting example
- Intertiki internal details
  - Get version: intertiki:get_version
  - Remote login: intertiki.validate
  - Future enhancements
  - Trouble shooting
- Intertiki Client tab
- Intertiki Server tab
- Webservice Registration
- Search Engine Friendly URL
- Video
  - Kaltura Video Editing
    1. Setting up a Kaltura account in Tiki
    2. Using Kaltura feature in Tiki
- Kaltura tab
- Ustream Watershed tab
- Ustream Watershed
  - Activate Twitter integration
    - User authorization
  - Setting up facebook integration
    - Step 0
    - Step 1
    - Step 2
    - Step 3
    - Step 4
    - Step 5
    - Step 6
    - User authorization
  - Setting up bit.ly as URL shortener
  - Using twitter and facebook in shoutbox
  - Using twitter and facebook to share a page
  - Using ShareThis
Activate Twitter integration

First of all, go to the [Twitter page for new applications](http://twitter.com) and register your site as a new application.

As Callback URL you must give the URL for tiki-socialnetworks.php on your site. This is where users will be redirected when authorizing your app with oauth.

You also must ask for the access type Read & Write otherwise your users will not be allowed to tweet.

After registering your site, you get a consumer key and consumer secret which you must enter in the tab Social networks on the admin panel. If that tab is disabled, turn on the feature Social networks on the features page first.

To grant a group access to the social networks functionality, set the permission user can use social network integration (tiki_p_socialnetworks) for that group on the Permissions page.

User authorization

Before being able to use the twitter integration, users must authorize the TikiWiki site by requesting an oauth token.
This can be done via the Social networks tab on My Tiki.

By clicking on the Authorize button, the user will be redirected to the twitter page, asking for confirmation. If the user agrees, an oauth token will be stored in the users preferences.

Setting up facebook integration

First, you need to register a new application with facebook. This can be done via the Developers tool. Later on, you can edit the Application via Application settings in your facebook profile.
Step 0

On the Developer page click on Set Up New Application and enter a name for your Application, sell your soul (agree to the terms) and click on Create Application. After a successful captcha check, you can proceed with step 1.

You may need to login in facebook to accept the validation process in facebook (to allow the developer application use your account details in facebook, etc).

Step 1

The name of your application is already set, so you don't need to enter a new one. Feel free to upload a logo and icon for your app. As I give support via e-Mail, I entered my email address for the users support.

Step 2

Enter the site URL and the Site Domain. My test server is at test.ott-consult.de and tiki is at the URL for my test server is at http://test.ott-consult.de/trunk. The Site URL therefore is http://test.ott-consult.de/trunk/tiki-socialnetworks.php?request_facebook.

Step 3

In this step, you don't to change anything since the Post-Authorize Callback URL field has been removed by Facebook.
Step 4

Here, you choose the way your application authorizes with Facebook. As it is set by default, just check that HTML5/mobile web for your Application type is selected.
Step 5

Start Using Facebook Credits, this financial/billing integration mostly not needed for Tikiwiki, leave it that way.

Step 6

On this last step, you can give the facebook **Deauthorize Callback** which will be called, when a user disallows your application on facebook. Don't choose sandbox mode here.

Usually, your web server has a static IP address. By putting it on the **server whitelist**, you can add a bit of security, as only requests from that IP will be processed. If you run a server farm with multiple servers, add all IP addresses.

You can also uncheck all the "deprecated" setting, it won't hurt.
Now you created the application at facebook and you can enter the data on your tiki server. Go to Admin->Social networks and enter the data from facebook.

User authorization

Before being able to use the facebook integration, users must authorize the TikiWiki site by requesting an oauth token. This can be done via the Social networks tab on My Tiki.

Note: As I (Bernard) authorize it I encounter an error from Facebook servers: "message": "Invalid redirect_uri: Given URL is not allowed by the Application configuration.". I had to logout/login for Facebook to accept the authorization. It is possible also that you have to wait more than 15mn for the Facebook server to use the setting you just entered.

Setting up bit.ly as URL shortener

At the moment, this is only used by the Share feature. By going to bit.ly, you can register and request a key. As Admin, you can force all users to use the site wide key which gives you a nice overview on the pages shared by your users and the feedback on that.

Using twitter and facebook in shoutbox

When the site has been registered with twitter and/or facebook, an admin can allow the shoutbox module to show two additional checkboxes by setting the options "Tweet" and "Facebook".
If the user has the permission to use twitter/facebook and has authorized the site to send tweets or post to his facebook wall, the Shoutbox will offer a checkbox Tweet with twitter and a checkbox Post on facebook wall. By activating these checkboxes, in addition to sending a shout, the message will also sent by twitter or posted on your facebook wall.

**Using twitter and facebook to share a page**

When the above prerequisites are given, a user who authorized the site with twitter/facebook can use the Share feature not only to send emails/internal messages, but also tweet them and like those pages on his facebook wall.

**Using ShareThis**

You can also allow your users to send links from pages in your tiki to many social networking sites by means of the widget from ShareThis (http://www.sharethis.com).

Since Tiki6 the widget "share this" is also available in blog posts if you enable it at: "Admin home > Blogs > General Settings > Sharing on social networks > ShareThis buttons"

And since Tiki6.1, it's also available for articles: "Admin home > Articles > General Settings > Sharing on social networks > ShareThis buttons"

In trackers, you can use the widget "Share This" by means of adding a call to PluginShareThis in a static text field.

**Related**

- Share
- PluginShareThis

**Aliases**

SocialNetwork | SocialNetworks | Social Network | Twitter | Facebook